

English Translation of

# NAHJ - UL - BALAGHA

*By*

**HAZRAT MAULA ALI IBN ABU TALIB**

(Cousin & Son in law of the Prophet Mohammad)

*Edited and Translated*

*By*

**DR. MUHAMMAD ALI AL-HAJ SALMIN**

**D. LITT. (U.S.A.)**

*Founder - President*

**THE GRAND MUSLIM MISSION**

Mahboob Manzil, "B" Block, Top Floor, Musafirkhana Rd.,  
BOMBAY - 1 (India).

## *By the same Author*

THE HOLY PROPHET MOHAMMAD : through different Lights.

MOHAMMAD : The Commander of the Faithful.

ALI : The Caliph.

IMAM HASAN : The Chief of the Youth of Paradise.

IMAM HUSAIN : The Greatest World-Martyr.

HISTORY & PHILOSOPHY OF IMAM HUSAIN'S MARTYRDOM.

FATIMAH : The Lady of the Light.

SAYYIDAH ZAINAB.

SAYYIDAH SHAHRBANO (Eng.)

" " " " (Urdu)

HOLY PROPHET (Poetry).

ISLAM : Its Mission in the world.

ISLAM & DEMOCRACY.

ISLAM & KINDNESS TO ANIMALS.

ENGLISH TRANSLATION OF 'Nahj-ul-Balagha'.

THE 12 IMAMS : Biographies.

MAULANA MOHAMMAD ALI—His Political Achievements.

THE HOLY SAINT OF AJMER.

THE FIRST 4 CALIPHS.

ISLAM : KINGDOM OF ALLAH.

THE MIGHTY IMAM HUSAIN

BIOGRAPHY OF HAZRAT MOULA ALI IBN ABU TALIB.

ISLAM & OTHER PROPHETS.

THE POSITION OF AHLUL BAIT IN ISLAM.

AFTER KERBALA.

THE STANDARD BEARER OF ISLAM.

ISLAM & WOMAN.

ISLAM & COW PROTECTION.

PROPHET ZORASTER.

BUDDHA : The Great.

## FOREWORD

THIS is the first book in English language containing the sermons and sayings of Ali, the cousin and son in law of the Holy Prophet Mohammad. For the first time these sermons have been translated into English and it took a considerably long time before it could be completed. However, it is a spontaneous labour of love and service to humanity.

Ali was the first to embrace Islam at the early age of 13 and the first Imam in Islam. "I am about to make the Imam of mankind." The Holy Quran, chapter 2, verse 118—Also, "And we made them Imams who should guide (others) by our command." Chapter 16, verse 73. The high position which Hazrat Maula Ali held in Islam can be well discerned by the following reported by Abdullah Ibne Abbas, who said that the Holy Prophet had said, "Whosoever wants to see the knowledge of Adam, the piety of Noha, devotion of Abraham, the awe of Moses, service and abstinence of Jesus, he should look at the bright face of Ali." This tradition has been related by a number of Ulama of the Sunni school of thought as Abul Khair Al Hakemi has reported on behalf of Abul Khumra and Nishapuri in his commentary on the Holy Quran as well as the great theologian Al Razi under the verse of Mobahila in his commentary of the Holy Quran called Tafsirul Kabir.

I was thinking to translate this master piece of Hazrat Maula Ali since a long time and I thank God, the Merciful, Who has taken from this humble self this great service of the sermons, which as translated here are taken from his book called NAHJUL BALAGHA and most of the Ulama of Islam admit that Nahjul Balagha is the book comprising of the sermons of Hazrat Maula Ali. These sermons have been edited and gathered together by the venerable and great theologian Syed Al Radzi. The great Mufti of Egypt, Shaikh Ibne Abdu has written a commentary in Arabic on Nahjul Balagha and in the preface he writes "This compilation is great in importance after the Holy Quran and the sayings of the Holy Prophet." This book contains letters, sermons, sayings, exhortations, advices, complaints, verdicts,

penal and religious laws economic problems social riddles financial questions and psychological discussions

All the traditions agree that Ali was the most beloved of all to the Holy Prophet Mohammad So much so that a tradition is reported by Ahmed Bin Humbal and Tabari that the Prophet said I and Ali were a unit of light four thousand years before Adam was born Then we descended through generations and generations till we reached Abdul Muttalib when we were separated into two the one went to Abdullah and the other to Abu Talib There is another report by Hazrat Salman Farsi who said I heard the Prophet say I and Ali were a unit of light fourteen thousand years before Adam was born

By these speeches of the Holy Prophet one can well understand the high esteem under which Ali was held by God and the Holy Prophet Mohammad On one occasion the Holy Prophet is reported to have said I am the city of knowledge and Ali is its gate, which shows that the most learned men amongst the household of the Holy Prophet as well as the companions of the Holy Prophet Ali stood the best and first Allama Abdul Hamid Bin Habatullah who is well known by the name of Ibne Abil Hadid Madaini Baghdadi who died in 655 A H and who has written a detailed commentary on Nahjul Balagha says This book is below the words of the Creator and above the words of the created Those who say that (1) NAHJUL BALAGHA is not the speech of Hazrat Maula Ali have erred and exposed their ignorance People of authority like Allama Ibne Abil Hadid Ibne Khashshab Abdul Hamid Bin Yahya Ibne Aseer Allama Syed Razi Mohammad Majdud Din Mohammad Bin Yaqoob Teerozabadi (died 817 A H) Jamaluddin Abul Fazal Mohammad Bin Mukarrem Bin Ali Afriki Misry (died 711 A H) Ibne Jozi (died 654 A H) and scores of others—all have agreed unanimously that Nahjul Balagha and what it contained are the words of Ali Ibne Abu Talib

Ali was wounded on Friday the 19th of Ramzan in 40 A H in the mosque of Kuffa where he had been to conduct the usual morning Service He was immediately brought to his house He survived 3 days He called his sons HASAN

---

(1) Nahjul Balagha in English means Path of Eloquence

and HUSAIN to his bed side and counselled them to be straight and fast in piety and resignation to the will of God, and to be kind to their younger brother (Abbas) the son of his Hamfite wife After that he wrote his testament, and continuing the name of Lord to the end so breathed his last ' ..

W Muir's Annals P 414 He died of his wound on Monday the 21st of Ramzan 40 A H at the age of 63 ' His remains were interned about 5 miles from Kuffa, and in after times a magnificent tomb, covered by Mosque, with splendid dome, rose over his grave, and which became the sight of a city, called \*Mashed Ali, or the sepulchre and was enriched and beautified by many Persian Monarchs" W Irving's Succ of Mohd , P 187 It is said that the sepulchre of Ali was kept hidden during the reign of Omyyads

# CONTENTS

	Pages		Pages
His Sermon No. 1	.. 3	His Sermon No. 49	.. 39
His Sermon No. 2	.. 4	His Sermon No. 50	.. 39
His Sermon No. 3	.. 8	His Sermon No. 51	.. 40
His Sermon No. 4	.. 8	His Sermon No. 52	.. 40
His Sermon No. 5	.. 10	His Sermon No. 53	.. 40
His Sermon No. 6	.. 10	His Sermon No. 54	.. 41
His Sermon No. 7	.. 10	His Sermon No. 55	.. 41
His Sermon No. 8	.. 13	His Sermon No. 56	.. 41
His Sermon No. 9	.. 14	His Sermon No. 57	.. 42
His Sermon No. 10	.. 15	His Sermon No. 58	.. 43
His Sermon No. 11	.. 15	His Sermon No. 59	.. 43
His Sermon No. 12	.. 16	His Sermon No. 60	.. 44
His Sermon No. 13	.. 16	His Sermon No. 61	.. 44
His Sermon No. 14	.. 17	His Sermon No. 62	.. 45
His Sermon No. 15	.. 17	His Sermon No. 63	.. 45
His Sermon No. 16	.. 17	His Sermon No. 64	.. 45
His Sermon No. 17	.. 18	His Sermon No. 65	.. 45
His Sermon No. 18	.. 19	His Sermon No. 66	.. 46
His Sermon No. 19	.. 19	His Sermon No. 67	.. 47
His Sermon No. 20	.. 20	His Sermon No. 68	.. 47
His Sermon No. 21	.. 21	His Sermon No. 69	.. 48
His Sermon No. 22	.. 22	His Sermon No. 70	.. 48
His Sermon No. 23	.. 23	His Sermon No. 71	.. 49
His Sermon No. 24	.. 24	His Sermon No. 72	.. 49
His Sermon No. 25	.. 24	His Sermon No. 73	.. 49
His Sermon No. 26	.. 24	His Sermon No. 74	.. 50
His Sermon No. 27	.. 25	His Sermon No. 75	.. 51
His Sermon No. 28	.. 26	His Sermon No. 76	.. 51
His Sermon No. 29	.. 26	His Sermon No. 77	.. 51
His Sermon No. 30	.. 27	His Sermon No. 78	.. 52
His Sermon No. 31	.. 28	His Sermon No. 79	.. 52
His Sermon No. 32	.. 29	His Sermon No. 80	.. 53
His Sermon No. 33	.. 30	His Sermon No. 81	.. 53
His Sermon No. 34	.. 30	His Sermon No. 82	.. 54
His Sermon No. 35	.. 31	His Sermon No. 83	.. 54
His Sermon No. 36	.. 31	His Sermon No. 84	.. 55
His Sermon No. 37	.. 32	His Sermon No. 85	.. 55
His Sermon No. 38	.. 33	His Sermon No. 86	.. 55
His Sermon No. 39	.. 34	His Sermon No. 87	.. 59
His Sermon No. 40	.. 34	His Sermon No. 88	.. 60
His Sermon No. 41	.. 35	His Sermon No. 89	.. 60
His Sermon No. 42	.. 35	His Sermon No. 90	.. 61
His Sermon No. 43	.. 36	His Sermon No. 91	.. 63
His Sermon No. 44	.. 36	His Sermon No. 92	.. 64
His Sermon No. 45	.. 37	His Sermon No. 93	.. 65
His Sermon No. 46	.. 38	His Sermon No. 94	.. 66
His Sermon No. 47	.. 38	His Sermon No. 95	.. 72
His Sermon No. 48	.. 39	His Sermon No. 96	.. 72

	Pages		Pages
<i>His Sermon No</i> 97	73	<i>His Sermon No</i> 148	123
<i>His Sermon No</i> 98	74	<i>His Sermon No</i> 149	124
<i>His Sermon No</i> 99	74	<i>His Sermon No</i> 150	125
<i>His Sermon No</i> 100	75	<i>His Sermon No</i> 151	126
<i>His Sermon No</i> 101	76	<i>His Sermon No</i> 152	127
<i>His Sermon No</i> 102	77	<i>His Sermon No</i> 153	128
<i>His Sermon No</i> 103	78	<i>His Sermon No</i> 154	129
<i>His Sermon No</i> 104	78	<i>His Sermon No</i> 155	131
<i>His Sermon No</i> 105	79	<i>His Sermon No</i> 156	133
<i>His Sermon No</i> 106	80	<i>His Sermon No</i> 157	134
<i>His Sermon No</i> 107	81	<i>His Sermon No</i> 158	135
<i>His Sermon No</i> 108	82	<i>His Sermon No</i> 159	137
<i>His Sermon No</i> 109	83	<i>His Sermon No</i> 160	137
<i>His Sermon No</i> 110	85	<i>His Sermon No</i> 161	138
<i>His Sermon No</i> 111	85	<i>His Sermon No</i> 162	140
<i>His Sermon No</i> 112	87	<i>His Sermon No</i> 163	141
<i>His Sermon No</i> 113	91	<i>His Sermon No</i> 164	142
<i>His Sermon No</i> 114	92	<i>His Sermon No</i> 165	143
<i>His Sermon No</i> 115	94	<i>His Sermon No</i> 166	144
<i>His Sermon No</i> 116	95	<i>His Sermon No</i> 167	145
<i>His Sermon No</i> 117	96	<i>His Sermon No</i> 168	146
<i>His Sermon No</i> 118	98	<i>His Sermon No</i> 169	147
<i>His Sermon No</i> 119	100	<i>His Sermon No</i> 170	147
<i>His Sermon No</i> 120	100	<i>His Sermon No</i> 171	148
<i>His Sermon No</i> 121	101	<i>His Sermon No</i> 172	149
<i>His Sermon No</i> 122	101	<i>His Sermon No</i> 173	149
<i>His Sermon No</i> 123	102	<i>His Sermon No</i> 174	150
<i>His Sermon No</i> 124	103	<i>His Sermon No</i> 175	151
<i>His Sermon No</i> 125	104	<i>His Sermon No</i> 176	152
<i>His Sermon No</i> 126	105	<i>His Sermon No</i> 177	152
<i>His Sermon No</i> 127	107	<i>His Sermon No</i> 178	155
<i>His Sermon No</i> 128	108	<i>His Sermon No</i> 179	156
<i>His Sermon No</i> 129	108	<i>His Sermon No</i> 180	157
<i>His Sermon No</i> 130	110	<i>His Sermon No</i> 181	157
<i>His Sermon No</i> 131	111	<i>His Sermon No</i> 182	158
<i>His Sermon No</i> 132	112	<i>His Sermon No</i> 183	158
<i>His Sermon No</i> 133	112	<i>His Sermon No</i> 184	161
<i>His Sermon No</i> 134	113	<i>His Sermon No</i> 185	164
<i>His Sermon No</i> 135	114	<i>His Sermon No</i> 186	164
<i>His Sermon No</i> 136	115	<i>His Sermon No</i> 187	166
<i>His Sermon No</i> 137	116	<i>His Sermon No</i> 188	168
<i>His Sermon No</i> 138	116	<i>His Sermon No</i> 189	169
<i>His Sermon No</i> 139	116	<i>His Sermon No</i> 190	170
<i>His Sermon No</i> 140	117	<i>His Sermon No</i> 191	171
<i>His Sermon No</i> 141	118	<i>His Sermon No</i> 192	172
<i>His Sermon No</i> 142	118	<i>His Sermon No</i> 193	174
<i>His Sermon No</i> 143	119	<i>His Sermon No</i> 194	182
<i>His Sermon No</i> 144	120	<i>His Sermon No</i> 195	185
<i>His Sermon No</i> 145	120	<i>His Sermon No</i> 196	186
<i>His Sermon No</i> 146	121	<i>His Sermon No</i> 197	187
<i>His Sermon No</i> 147	122	<i>His Sermon No</i> 198	187

	Pages		Pages
His Sermon No 199	188	His Sermon No 226	213
His Sermon No 200	190	His Sermon No 227	213
His Sermon No 201	191	His Sermon No 228	214
His Sermon No 202	192	His Sermon No 229	215
His Sermon No 203	192	His Sermon No 230	215
His Sermon No 204	193	His Sermon No 231	215
His Sermon No 205	193	His Sermon No 232	217
His Sermon No 206	194	His Sermon No 233	217
His Sermon No 207	194	His Sermon No 234	217
His Sermon No 208	195	His Sermon No 235	218
His Sermon No 209	195	His Sermon No 236	218
His Sermon No 210	195	His Sermon No 237	219
His Sermon No 211	196	His Sermon No 238	219
His Sermon No 212	197	His Sermon No 239	219
His Sermon No 212	198	His Sermon No 240	220
His Sermon No 214	198	His Sermon No 241	220
His Sermon No 215	199	His Sermon No 242	221
His Sermon No 216	200	Sayings of Hazrat Ali	221 246
His Sermon No 217	200	His Orders and Instructions	246
His Sermon No 218	203		277
His Sermon No 219	206	Classified Sayings of Hazrat	
His Sermon No 220	206	Ali . . .	274 287
His Sermon No 221	207	The famous Sermon of	
His Sermon No 222	207	Hazrat Ali, without	
His Sermon No 223	209	'Alif' : e 'A'	288
His Sermon No 224	210	Original Arabic Sermon	295
His Sermon No 225	212		



butes, considers Him, as it were, to be similar and equal to creatures, and he who takes Him to be similar and equal to creatures admits duality. And one passing from unity to duality is, as it were, holding Him into two parts, and such a man is surely ignorant and can never reach the state of Divine knowledge. And one who points out that High and Lofty Being does as it were confine Him. Now one who confines Him does, as it were reckon Him, and one who questions as to the place where God exists does, as it were, find room for Him and accommodates Him there. And one who asks as to the thing upon which God rests does hold Him to be devoid of His independent being and takes Him dependent on another thing for His existence.

He is such a powerful God, as has been existent for ever (i.e. has no beginning of His existence). He exists, but *has not come into existence from non existence*. He is with everything but not temporarily (i.e. accompanies everything by virtue of His innate eternity). He is away from every thing but not by way of separation or disconnection (because in case the very preserver of a thing gets apart from it, the thing can not exist). He is the agent but not with the help of motion and improvements. He is the protector of every thing because nothing in His creation is a self protecting object. He is singular and alone, because He is not familiar with only one place where to take rest. He is not perplexed at the loss of a thing (causing relief to Him), because He does not really need it, His existence being above such thing. He has created the universe and made the beginning of the creation in a proper form. There was no experiment by which He profited, nor was there any anxiety (mental physical or sensual) with which He was affected in the creation of the world, *nor was there any care to which he was put in deciding whether He should or should not create a certain thing*.

When the time came, He put things into motion and mixed up the different objects as spiritual elements with material bodies and energy with action. He specified the properties of various objects and made certain distinctive marks indispensable for them. He was aware of these objects before their creation knew of their beginnings and ends and was acquainted with their tendencies and kinds.

The creator of the universe created the wide expanses of the skies cleft the sides and upper parts of the atmosphere and placed rivers on the upper layer the clashing waves of which were stormy and pervasive He set water on the back of the hard winds and the breaking hurricanes and then ordered them to make it flow at the same time supporting and guarding it He put the winds close to their extremities although the lower parts of them were expansive and the rivers flowed over the Earth's surface Then the Almighty God created the barren winds the gusts of which do not produce vegetables and plants and freshness He preserved them invigorated their gusts and extended their field of activity far and wide Then He ordered them to clash against the waves of the unlimited ocean and placed those winds over the seas by the Divine ordainment These winds put the waters *into motion as is shaken a leather bag (full of curds in order to obtain butter)* and gave it a thorough jerk in the atmosphere and transformed its beginning into its end and its stillness into motion in so far that the major portion of it (the bulging part which appears in seas) was raised up by the storms and the vast ocean threw up the accumulated foam The foam thus thrown up was raised and expanded in the aerial cavity and space and then the seven heavens were quite skillfully formed of it the lower parts of which were made rotating or stationary while the upper parts were elevated to an extreme height They were set up without pillars and pitched up without pegs

Then the heavens were adorned with the beauty of the stars & the piercing light The great luminary i.e. the Sun was lighted up which gives light everywhere and also was made the moon which cools the eyes of mankind Each of them stands stationary amid the moving heavens the rotary roofs and flying surface of them Then He created the heavenly bodies that exist between the high heavens Then heavens were filled up with the various kinds of angels Some of these angels ever lie prostrate never finding time to be in a bending position while others always keep in a bending posture & never stand erect Some of them are such as are standing in a file before His glorious magnificence and never leave their places Some of them are repeating beads (i.e. crying out praises of God) and never get tired or

vexed of it The eyes of these angels are never affected with torpor and they are free from intellectual oversight, bodily fatigue or mental indifference Some of them are the trustees of His commandments and are His tongue (interpreter) for the Prophets and visit them at different places with His words Some of them guard His creatures and are the gate keepers of the Paradise Some of them are those whose feet touch the lowest part of the earth and the head overtop the highest heaven, their limbs and parts of body do not accommodate in the length and breadth of the universe Their shoulders are fit for the pillars of the heavens these angels are the carriers of the heaven Their eyes are bent in front of the highest heaven and are wrapping themselves up in their wings under it (by wings is meant their knowledge and inspiration) They do not associate their conception of God with any picture and do not attribute to Him the qualities of the creature, neither confine Him to any space or place, nor illustrate Him with any illustration or example

---

## HIS SERMON NO. 2.

### The Creation of Adam.

The Almighty God collected a kind of clay from the hard and level, sweet and saltish earth and then moistened it with water, until it became adhesive Then He produced a figure with sides and dimensions, joints and limbs and dried it until it assumed a physical shape He hardened and purified it until it became thick and fermented (As a seed gets rotten before growth) then He infused into it His own soul for a limited time and a definite period On the infusion of the soul, the figure got up and became an intelligent rational being, evincing intellect, understanding and rationality He had external limbs which He put into use He also had internal faculties which He was exercising He possessed an instinct by virtue of which he could distinguish right from wrong could taste, smell and make difference between colours and commodities His stuff was fermented with various colours, similar qualities opposite tendencies, different temperaments and pleasures and griefs

Now the Almighty God ordained the angels to keep the trust which was confided to them and to follow the advice which was given to them and which He had confirmed by taking their consent to pay homage to Adam to bow down their heads before him and to deal with him with humanity and submission. So He commanded them to prostrate themselves before him (to pay homage to him). All the angels obeyed but Satan and his followers revolted. They were overcome by their innate insubordination and were overpowered by their constitutional adverseness and hardness. They prided upon their birth from fire and disgraced the one born from earth.

Now the Almighty allowed time to Satan so that he might not render himself liable to His displeasure and wrath, his examination must terminate and the promise made to Him might be fulfilled. He declared to him that he was given an extension till the appointed time i.e. the Day of Judgment.

The God put Adam in such a place where he could pass his life happily and made his abode free from all sorrows and griefs. He warned him against Satan and his enmity. His enemy Satan enticed him from the allurements of the immortal place and the company of the virtuous. Because of this deception, Adam turned his belief into doubt and his resolution into suspicion and indifference. The firm belief of the good of not eating the forbidden fruit was turned into hesitation and the signs of weakness and infirmity began to creep into the resolute determination of never touching the prohibited plant. He exchanged pleasure and happiness for a shame accompanied with tears and a love for his lost honour. Then the Almighty (when Adam got ashamed) spread the carpet of repentance for him and breathed the word of His mercy and grace into his mind and promised to take him again into His paradise. He sent him down in a place of trial and multiplication of descendants. When Adam came down upon this earth and his progeny began to multiply, God chose the prophets from his descendants. He took covenants from them for the sustenance of the Divine inspiration and made them His assistants for the propagation of the Divine MISSION. So, when most of the creatures broke their covenants, did not keep the

word they had given to God in the spiritual world forgot the Divine rights began to insinuate the existence of partners and parallels of Him devils led them astray from the true path and set them aside from the worship of God He then sent down His apostles and prophets successively to them so that they might demand from them the fulfilment of the covenant they had promised to God in the spiritual world remind them of the Divine blessings which they had forgotten tell them the messages of God spread the hidden treasures of wisdom before them and show them the manifestations of nature *e.g.* the roof which was hanging over their heads the resting place which was put under their feet the means of life and subsistence which were keeping them alive the passing lengths of lives which were destroying them the fatigue and labour which were rendering them weak and old and the misfortunes which were befalling them incessantly God has never kept this world devoid of the inspired prophets the descended book the indispensable successor to the prophet or the reasonable path They were those prophets whose minority did neither tamper with the proper discharge of their mission nor did the majority of the imposters stand in their way Each prophet was told the name of his successor as Jesus Christ has said The name of the Prophet who will follow me will be Ahmed and each of the present prophets recognized the past ones *i.e.* he attested their prophecy In this way the time passed on rapidly Long ages passed away generations changed until God the Almighty fulfilled His word and to accomplish His mission (Divine) inspired the Prophet Muhammad the confession of whose prophecy was taken (in the spiritual world) from all the prophets When the said Muhammad was inspired the people on the earth were divided into different sects adhered to various creeds and followed diverse ways They were divided into three classes Some of them were making the semblance of God as idols etc The others were following infidelity in the name of God that is attributed Divine properties to the creatures as the infidel Arabs did while the rest pointed towards the beings other than God *i.e.* ascribed the manifestations of the universe to something else than God as the atheists did So the said prophet showed them the true path got them out of darkness and ignorance and elevated them to a high stage Then the

Almighty preferred Muhammad's visit to Himself and by way of condescension and indulgence liked his approach to the Divine presence. He graced him on his passing away from the world, made him safe from all the painful trials and examinations and called him to Himself with great kindness and esteem. This true Prophet as well has left amongst you the same object as was left by the past prophets amongst their followers, as none of them left behind him anything but the clear manifest and lasting signs. The object left amongst you is the Book of God (Quran) which describes the lawful and the unlawful, the compulsory and optional duties, the orders that have been cancelled, and those that are applicable to the capacities of men (as patients and travellers are exempted from fasts), the orders that cannot be dispensed with as "Maintain Prayers," the specific expressions as 'Pilgrim of the House' (here the word House refers to Kaaba), the general injunctions, as "He who intentionally kills the faithful is liable to go to Hell." It implies generally (i.e. whosoever kills the faithful), the terms that are limited, the clear verses the meanings of which are obvious and those verses the meanings of which are doubtful.

All these things have been mentioned in this Divine book. It explains the ambiguous and clears the implied subtleties and significations. This book contains the truth, the knowledge of which is obligatory for men and for the ignorance of which they cannot put forth any excuse, and it also contains the things, the knowledge of which is optional for them. It embodies the duties, the performance of which is incumbent and proved, taking the original text into regard, but they have been cancelled by the traditions. It gives expressions to those ordinances which are compulsory as far as the traditions are concerned but it has permitted their abandonment. It also comprises the orders which are compulsory at one time but do not remain so under changed circumstances. This book makes distinction between the unlawful affairs e.g. the major sins which are threatened with the fire of Hell and the minor sins for which is promised pardon and grace. It also contains the good deeds, only a portion of which is acceptable to God, allowing at the same time full liberty as to their accomplishment to whatever extent you like.

## **HIS SERMON No. 3**

### **On Haj (Pilgrimage to Mecca)**

God has made the pilgrimage to His house, the Qibla (object of veneration and reverence) of all the world incumbent upon you. People flock to it just as animals flock to water. They go there with the same interest and zeal as the wild pigeons go to the hill to take shelter. God has made this Haj (pilgrimage) the sign of their submission to Him which is only due to the Almighty God. He has made it the sign of their belief and conviction in Him which is only due to His respect.

He has selected some people who listen to Him, who obey His invitation, who testify to His word, who stand in the place of His prophets and who resemble those angels who make rounds of the Divine throne (Empyrean). They make huge profits in the business of prayers and go in a hurry to the promised place of pardon and grace. God has made this house the symbol of Islam and the shelter for the refugees.

God has made Haj (pilgrimage) compulsory and obligatory. He has made the pilgrimage to Kaaba incumbent on you. God says 'Haj is incumbent on those who are rich and wealthy, (He does not care for the person) who disregards this Divine command for God is self sufficient.

---

## **HIS SERMON No. 4**

### **On the return from the battle of Siffin**

Wishing the completion of His blessings, paying Him His due respect and avoiding sins, I thank God for His blessings. I seek His help in poverty and needs which may suffice. Verily he whom He guides does not go astray and he to whom He is inimical does not get salvation. He whom He helps is not bewildered and confounded. Verily the pan of the balance of His thanks is the heaviest and it is the best treasure which is ever gathered.

I testify that there is no god but God and He has no co-sharer. The sincerity of the witness is tested, and I shall be a witness to Him throughout my whole life with the earnestness of belief and conviction unalloyed by polytheism in the least. I will preserve it for dreadful places and (insurmountable) difficulties because this witness is the amulet of belief, commencement of kindness, the will of God and repulse to the Satan. I testify that Muhammad (Peace of God be on him) is His servant and Apostle whom God sent with the famous faith, the narrated ordinance, the written book (the Holy Quran) and strong commands and prohibitions to remove the doubts and superstitions of the people and to give (irrefutable) reasonings and proofs (in support of his statements). He was sent to make the people fear the verses of God and His punishment.

(When Muhammad—peace of God be on him—became Prophet) People were entangled and involved in such seditions that the rope of the religion was broken and the pillars of conviction were shaken and uprooted. Realities were changed and His commands were set at naught (disregarded). The way of escape from the prevalent evils was too narrow and the right path was invisible. People disregarded the commands and prohibitions of the Almighty God and followed the Satan blindly. Faith was left in helplessness. Its pillars fell down. Its ways were changed and the right & straight path was obliterated. People obeyed the Satan and followed him in his foot steps. They went to his quay. They advanced with the flags of the Satan. His flags were hoisted in such seditions as trampled them down under their feet (in due course of time). The sedition spread and now the people were confounded and perplexed. They were ignorant and as such they fell an easy prey to the sedition in the best place Mecca, (Opinions are divergent regarding the place. Some persons say that it refers to Mecca, while others say that it refers to Kufa) for its inhabitants are the worst. Their vigil is their sleep and their tears are their collyrium. It is such a place that people who understand and know (believers) are quiet and the people who do not understand and know (unbelievers) are respected and honoured.



## **HIS SERMON No 5.**

### **In the praise of Ahlul-Bait**

The progeny of the Holy Prophet are his confidants the shelter of his commands the trust of his knowledge the protection of his wisdom the stronghold of the Quran and the mainstay of his faith It is they who have made the crooked back of Islam straight It is they who have eliminated the fear of the Muslims i e the Muslims were afraid of the unbelievers but the progeny of the Prophet made them bold and brave and thus eliminated their fear of the unbelievers

---

## **HIS SERMON NO 6**

### **The Ahlulbait were matchless**

They (hypocrites) sowed the seeds of evils and corruptions and watered them with pride and arrogance and gathered the crop of annihilation and destruction for themselves None of the followers of Muhammad (peace of God be on him) can be compared with the progeny of the Prophet The recipients of the blessings can on no account stand in comparison with the bestowers of the blessings The Ahlul bait are the foundation stone of Islam They are the pillars of the faith Those who go ahead or lag behind turn to them for help and guidance to attain salvation They enjoy the privilege and right of Imamatus and Vicegerency which they retain Now he who was the rightful and deserving heir to the caliphate has got it

---

## **HIS SERMON No 7**

### **Shaqshaqiya**

A description of the first three Caliphs and Hazrat Ali's patience over the usurpation of his rights

Behold! By God that person put on the shirt of Caliphate and verily he knows that I am as indispensable to the

---

(1) Ahlul-Bait is an Arabic word means people of the house hence meaning the progeny of the Holy prophet Muhammad

Caliphate as the peg (nail) of the grinding stone upon which its turning depends is indispensable

The height of my rank and position is such that the fountain of knowledge flows from me and no bird can fly to that height. At last, I conuved at the question of Caliphate and turned my face from it. I was in a nice fix and did not know what to do. Should I fight without any help and support or should I patiently bear this great loss in this overwhelming darkness in which old persons altogether lost their vitality and energy and children became old. The believers might try their utmost and perish in their attempts but (after considering over the pros and cons) I arrived at the conclusion that it was better for me to have patience than to fight and the decision was a wise one. So I bore it patiently although the very thought that my inheritance was usurped was unbearable and intolerable to me. At last, the first (Caliph) died but he nominated another person (Hazrat Umar) to the Caliphate. (There is a vast difference between comfort and trouble.)

Then he (Maula Ali) recited this verse of Ashas which was quite appropriate to that occasion—There is a vast difference between these 2 days—the day when I go riding upon the back of my camel is quite different from the day when I live at Hayan in peace and prosperity, for in the first case, there is nothing but trouble and grief, but in the second case, there is nothing but ease and comfort.

It is a great wonder! The first Caliph needed badly the help and support of others in his life time. Now (at the time of his death) he entrusted the Caliphate to another person and strengthened his (Hazrat Umar's) position. They (the first two Caliphs—Hazrat Abu Bakr Siddique and Hazrat Umar Farooq) have badly sucked the udder of the Caliphate in their turns and have placed it in such a perilous and critical situation that it is too difficult to heal its wounds. In the past, many blunders were committed and in future also, there shall be many blunders. About the question of Caliphate many lame excuses have been offered in the past and many more shall be offered in the future.

The man who takes the bridle of the Caliphate is like the rider on a refractory and impudent camel. If its bridle is

they gave up the right and straight path as if they had not heard the word of God that the heaven is for those who do not create dissension and sedition in this world and it is for the pious and the holy. By God ! they did hear it and hear it well but they loved this beautiful and decorated world.

Listen ! I say by that God who rent the seeds and who gave life to animals that if the people had not sworn allegiance to me, if I had not been thankful to God, if the learned theologians of Islam had not promised to Him to consider over the life of luxury of the tyrants and the hunger of the oppressed (The rights of the oppressed must be taken from the tyrants), I would have abdicated the Caliphate. (Let it go to dogs). Certainly I would have now left it as I had left it in the beginning and you would have seen that this world of yours is worse to me than the sneezing of a goat or a sheep. The narrators of this sermon say that when the Am'rul-Momineen arrived at this stage of the sermon, a foreigner handed over a letter to him and he began to read it. When he had read it, Ibne Abbas requested Hazrat Ali to continue the sermon Thereupon he said, "Oh Ibne Abbas ! it was the grunting of a camel which was constantly coming out of my throat. Now it is calm and quiet."

---

### HIS SERMON No. 8.

The condition of the Quraish and the favours of the Ahlulbait :—

You received guidance from us in darkness and you were elevated on account of us. You got the light of morning in the dark night through us. May those ears be deaf which do not listen to good pieces of advice and which do not understand warnings But those ears which have become deaf due to loud and harsh voice can not hear mild and low voice ! May God keep that heart strong, firm and stable which trembles due to His fear !

(As regards you—Quraish) I always expected deceit and fraud from you and I waited for it. I saw in you the traits of traitors and knaves, but the sheaf of religion (with which

pulled back its nostril will be wounded and if it is made loose, then she will put the life of the rider into danger By God ! the people were misled They forgot the straight path and went astray I patiently bore this acute pain and trouble for a long period The second Caliph (Hazrat Umar) also died He left the question of the Caliphate to be decided by a body (of six persons) of which I was one

O God ! What to do with this advisory body ? People never doubted my ability in comparison with the first Caliph and yet I was amalgamated with these persons When they flew high I also flew high When they came down I also came down (re I demand my rights from these inferior persons just as I demanded them from the first two Caliphs and I accepted to become a member of the advisory committee)

Behold ! One of these (six) persons (Talha or Sa'd) turned against me because of malice and the other (Abdul Rahman bin Auf) who was the brother in law of (Hazrat) Usman and on account of some unmentionable reasons became my enemy In short the third person of the nation, (Hazrat) Usman proudly (became Caliph) spreading his stomach for fodder stood up and the children of his father (Banu Umayya) also stood up and began to eat (misappropriate) the money of the public treasury just as the camels eat grass in the spring harvest However this man was murdered because of his actions

(Now) the people did not frighten me but they flocked to me in large numbers like the army of locusts and trampled down upon my sons (Hazrat Imam Hasan & Hazrat Imam Husain) and scratched out my sides (or my sheet was torn to pieces) The people gathered round me like the flock of sheep

(God be praised ! Now behold ! ) When (after the allegiance) I took up the reins of Caliphate, one party (Hazrat Ayesha's party—the battle of Jamal) broke the oath of allegiance a second party (Kharijites party—the battle of Nehrawan) became apostates and a third party (Muawiyah's party—the battle of Siffin) persecuted and tortured me and

they gave up the right and straight path as if they had not heard the word of God that the heaven is for those who do not create dissension and sedition in this world and it is for the pious and the holy. By God ! they did hear it and hear it well but they loved this beautiful and decorated world.

Listen ! I say by that God who rent the seeds and who gave life to animals that if the people had not sworn allegiance to me, if I had not been thankful to God, if the learned theologians of Islam had not promised to Him to consider over the life of luxury of the tyrants and the hunger of the oppressed (The rights of the oppressed must be taken from the tyrants), I would have abdicated the Caliphate. (Let it go to dogs). Certainly I would have now left it as I had left it in the beginning and you would have seen that this world of yours is worse to me than the sneezing of a goat or a sheep. The narrators of this sermon say that when the Am-rul-Momineen arrived at this stage of the sermon, a foreigner handed over a letter to him and he began to read it. When he had read it, Ibne Abbas requested Hazrat Ali to continue the sermon. Thereupon he said, "Oh Ibne Abbas ! it was the grunting of a camel which was constantly coming out of my throat. Now it is calm and quiet."

---

### HIS SERMON No. 8.

The condition of the Quraish and the favours of the Ahlulbait :—

You received guidance from us in darkness and you were elevated on account of us. You got the light of morning in the dark night through us. May those ears be deaf which do not listen to good pieces of advice and which do not understand warnings. But those ears which have become deaf due to loud and harsh voice can not hear mild and low voice ! May God keep that heart strong, firm and stable which trembles due to His fear !

(As regards you—Quraish) I always expected deceit and fraud from you and I waited for it. I saw in you the traits of traitors and knaves, but the sheaf of religion (with which

you covered yourself) hid you from me, although my frank (and disinterested) intention warned me against your treachery. I stood on the right and straight path for you in midst of your misleading and misguiding ways and when you met and (walked) and when you had no leader and when you dug the well of guidance (in the ignorance of your thirst for correct lead)

Today I make numberless persons talk (I explain to you all the implications) He who has turned against me and did not cooperate with me has no voice I never doubted the truth since I knew it (The Prophet) Moses was not afraid of his life, (It refers to the danger of the magicians) but he was most afraid of the establishment of the power of the capitalists He was also afraid of the victory of the falsehood over the truth (i.e. He was afraid of the establishment of the power of the ignorant) Today we stand on the cross road of the truth and the falsehood (i.e. I am the upholder of the truth and you are the upholder of the falsehood) (Really speaking) he who trusts in the truth shall not be thirsty (i.e. He shall be safe)

---

### HIS SERMON No. 9

When Hazrat Abbas and Abu Sofyan went to Hazrat Ali to swear allegiance to him after the death of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be on him) Hazrat Ali delivered this sermon :—

O people ! Cross the waves of seditions in the boats of salvation and avoid the path of hatred and malice Throw off the crown of pride and vanity He who undertakes any work with the help of supporters succeeds and he who for want of help and support saves himself from seditions gets ease and comfort This Caliphate is like dirty water and it is a morsel which causes suffocation to the eater and endangers his life He who picks up raw and green fruits instead of ripe ones is like a man who ploughs fallow land.

(Now) if I say anything (about Caliphate), people will remark that (Hazrat) Ali has become greedy of wealth and power And if I keep quiet, they will say that I am afraid

of death in taking my rights (Alas!) the fear of death is far away from me, for I have suffered all great and small troubles and griefs By God! Ibne Abu Talib loves death more than a child loves the breasts of its mother (It is not the fear of death which prevents me from claiming the Caliphate), but I am the confidant of such secrets and hidden knowledge as, if I expose to you, shall make you tremble just as the ropes tremble in a deep well

---

### HIS SERMON No 10.

When Talha and Zubair took their forces for the battle of Jamal and Hazrat Ali also decided to fight against them, he (Hazrat Ali) was advised not to fight. Thereupon he said :—

By God! (Now I will not be quiet) I will not be like the Indian badger (hyena) whose door is knocked at for its prey and it sleeps The fowler who lies in ambush for it, reaches there, deceives it and catches it I will fight with the help of the supporters of the Truth against the upholders of the falsehood I will continue to fight till my death with the help of the obedient people against the insubordinate people who have become easy victims of doubts and suspicions

Since the death of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be on him) I have been constantly deprived of my rights and others have been given preference to me, so much so that even now people are making preparation for war. (The Battle of Jamal which took place between Hazrat Ali, the fourth Caliph and Hazrat Ayesha, the beloved wife of the Holy Prophet )

---

### HIS SERMON No 11.

The condition of the Hypocrites —They (hypocrites for the achievements of their ends) made the Satan their patron and depend upon him (for support) The Satan also has made them his co workers He has laid eggs in their hearts

(created doubts and suspicions in them against me) which crept crawled and grew up in their laps They became so much mixed up with each other that their eyes became the eyes of the Satan and their tongues became the tongue of the Satan He instigated them to all evils and presented evils in beautiful and charming forms before them Their actions are quite similar to the actions of such persons as are the actions of the co workers of the Satan and through their tongues the Satan speaks nonsense

---

## **HIS SERMON No 12**

### **On Zubair**

Zubair thinks that he swore allegiance to me (Hazrat Ali) with hand and not with heart (i.e. his oath of allegiance was not sincere and earnest It is good indeed!) After all he admitted his oath of allegiance to me but now he has exposed his (hidden) enmity for me Now it is incumbent upon him to bring any tangible arguments (proofs) for the justification of his action (breaking the oath of allegiance) or he should again take the oath of allegiance to me

---

## **HIS SERMON No 13**

The boast, bluff and threat of the As-hab-i-Jamal (the followers of Hazrat Ayesha)

These persons (the party of Hazrat Ayesha) thundered and flashed much (but) despite their thunder and lightening they proved themselves to be cowards whereas we (the party of Hazrat Ali) never thundered till we had fought to our entire satisfaction (We never boasted of our power and victory like the enemy) We never flowed till we had rained (On the other hand the followers of Hazrat Ayesha boasted and prided much but in vain They were badly defeated)



### **HIS SERMON No. 14.**

**Muawiyah and the plight of his army and his own (Hazrat Ali's) deep religious insight.**

(Supporters of the Truth!) be careful! The Satan has formed his party and has gathered together his cavalry and infantry I have certainly deep religious insight (So I can distinguish between the right and the wrong) My conscience never put me into doubt and suspicion (and never deceived me) I never fell a victim of doubt and suspicion (in any way) By God! I will fill such a cistern (with water to the brim) that none but me shall be able to drain it These people shall neither return from it nor shall they (if any persons return) return to it again (i.e. I will gather together a very big army under my own command to fight against the army of Muawiyah Those persons who will participate in this battle against me shall be killed but those who will be fortunate enough to retreat shall never dare to fight against me)

---

### **HIS SERMON No. 15.**

**Hazrat Muhammad bin Hanafiya was given the flag of the army in the battle of Jamal Hazrat Ali gave him the following necessary instructions to be strictly followed in the battle.**

(Behold! Son!) Let the mountain move from its place, but you must (on no account) leave the battle field (Be strong and firm) Fight bravely and manfully Give your head in the way of God Fix your feet in the ground like pegs Let the last row (of the enemy's army) be your target. (Watch the movements of the enemy's army very minutely and closely) Fix your eyes and save them from being dazzled Look down Trust that help comes only from God

---

### **HIS SERMON No. 16.**

**When Hazrat Ali was victorious in the battle of Jamal against Hazrat Ayesha, a companion of the Holy Prophet said,**

"Would my brother had been alive to see your grand victory over the enemy"" Thereupon Hazrat Ali said —

Does your brother love me? Does he feel inclined towards me? He said Yes it is so Hazrat Ali then said Then let it be known to you that he was present amongst us Not to speak of him only all those persons who are yet to be born in this world were also with me in this battle and they shall be the instruments in the future expansion of Islam

---

## HIS SERMON No 17

### The Censure of the Basrites

(Basrites!) You were the followers of the army of a woman (Hazrat Ayyesha) and a beast (the camel of Hazrat Ayyesha) That beast blubbered and you at once became his followers When the legs of the camel were cut down all of you fled away Your nature is very bad You are faithless unreliable and untrustworthy Your religion is hypocrisy and enmity

The water of your city is bitter and blackish He who lives amongst you shall be involved in sins and he who goes away from you shall get any blessing from his Nourisher (God) (Remember that Basra shall be submerged under water and it shall be destroyed) I see that your mosque (of Basra) is above water like the upper part of a boat (Of course I see) that your land is cursed by God (Basra is over flooded) and everything is submerged under water

There is another tradition which runs as follows —

By God! Your city shall certainly be drowned and it seems to me as if the mosque of Basra is like the upper part of a boat or it looks like an ostrich seated on the ground

There is a third tradition which runs as follows —

*It (the mosque of Basra) looks like the breast of a sea bird in the deep water of the sea*

There is a fourth tradition which runs as follows —

(Basrites!) Considering over the nature of the land of Basra, your city is very dirty and stinky (This city) is very near from water (but) it is very far away from the sky. Nine tenths of the evils and corruptions are found here and one tenth is spread all over the world. He who comes here is involved in sins but he who flees away from it begs pardon of God (repents for his sins). I see your village submerged under water in such a way that nothing but the minarets of the mosque are seen and those minarets look like the breasts of the sea birds in the midst of the sea

---

### HIS SERMON No. 18.

#### The Censure of Basra & the Basrites.

(Basrites!) Your land is very near the water but it is very far away from the sky. You have not the least touch of wisdom. Your wisdom has been replaced by folly (That is why) you become the targets of every archer, delicious morsel for every eater and a victim of every hunter

---

### HIS SERMON No. 19.

(Hazrat Usman, the third Caliph, gave some fiefs to his relatives and Hazrat Ali during his Caliphate restored them to the Muslims).

By God! if I had found that women were married with the money of the public treasury and slave girls were bought with it (public money), I would have taken it (money) back also, for justice and equity are very wide terms. He who cannot do his work with justice and equity can not succeed in his work by repression and tyranny (for these terms—repression & tyranny—are very narrow)

## HIS SERMON No. 20

When the people took the oath of allegiance to Hazrat Ali in Madina after the cruel murder of Hazrat Usman the third Caliph he (Hazrat Ali) delivered the following sermon —

I am responsible for my word I stand surety for the veracity and truth of what I say Verily, the fear of God shall protect him who is fully in the know of the past trials and distresses and the future (impending) dangers and difficulties

(Be careful and alert!) Your first and past trials and distresses returned again today in the same way as they came when Muhammad (Peace of God be on him) became the Apostle of God I take the oath of that God Who made Muhammad (Peace of God be on him) the true Prophet (and say) that certainly you shall be badly mixed with one another (It refers to the Caliphate of Muawiyah when the noble and the ignoble, the good and the bad shall be so mixed that it shall be very difficult to make any distinction and discrimination between them) Certainly you shall be cut into pieces (like the pieces of meat) You shall be sifted and tested (You shall be examined and tested and if you will be found to be the lovers of the Ahlul Bait, you shall be put to sword) You shall go up and down like the boiling water in a kettle (i.e. the noble and men of high rank and status shall be replaced by the ignoble and men of inferior rank and position) On the rise of Islam those who had lagged behind (Abu Sofyan's descendants) shall take the place of those who had advanced (Ahlul Bait)

By God! I have kept no secret of what I ought to have disclosed and I never told a lie I was already informed of this oath of allegiance to me for Caliphate Remember that sins are like refractory horses upon which sinners ride and their bridles are loosened These horses with their riders shall rush into hell Piety (the fear of God) is like a trained horse The pious ride upon such horses and they have their bridles in their hands These horses take their riders into heaven (safe and sound) (There are only two things)—Truth and Falsehood So there are the supporters of the Truth and upholders of the Falsehood If any worshipper of falsehood

becomes ruler and has majority of followers (there is nothing to grumble at), for it has always been so ; and if the supporters of the Truth are only a few in number, (you need not be disappointed and discouraged) for it has always been the case (But I hope that Truth overcomes Falsehood) although it seldom happens that the thing which has gone back may come forward (i.e. Muawiyah the opponent of Hazrat Ali has numerical superiority and strength but he is the upholder and champion of Falsehood—a wrong cause—, Hazrat Ali is the supporter of the Truth but he has less followers than his adversary. Therefore, the followers of the Amirul-Momineen are afraid of the numerical strength of Muawiyah. If he once succeeds in his wrong cause, it shall be very difficult for the righteous to overthrow his power. The Amirul-Momineen advises his followers not to be discouraged and disappointed. He tells them to be firm, stable and resolute.)

---

## HIS SERMON No. 21.

### Suggestions for the suppression of Sedition.

He who (always) keeps before his eyes (the verdant and green garden of) heaven and (breaking and bursting flames of) hell, has no time to divert his attention to other affairs. (There are three kinds of people) (The first are those persons) who try their level best and they succeed (in their attempt) (The second are those persons who sit) idle and expect (to get everything without making any effort) and (the third are those persons) who retrace their steps (They are doomed) They are destined to go into hell. On the right and the left (of the path) there is apostacy and deception ; and the path of salvation is the middle (of the path). This is the path upon which the Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be upon him) has walked and ultimately (people) shall return to him. If a person goes on any other path but this, he is doomed. He who makes false imputation loses hope. He who stands against the Truth perishes. An ignorant man is he who does not know himself. The pious can never finish. (In such circumstances) no lands of any nation can be without water. Remain seated in your respective houses and reform and purify yourselves. (Repent for

your sins) Repentence shall benefit you (Remember that) praise none but God, and find fault with none but your own conscience

---

## HIS SERMON No 22

### "United We Stand "

There are only two persons whom God hates most One person is he whom God has left to his fate He walks apart from the straight path He is bent upon innovations and deceptions Such a man is an incendiary to each of the *misguided people* *He is far away from the straight path of the predecessors* In his life time and after his death, he is a misguide for his followers He takes upon himself the sins of other persons also whereas he himself is lost in sins

The second person is he who has picked up only ignorance This man tries his level best to spread apostacy among the ignorant and illiterate people In the darkness of seditions he runs here and there early in the morning He is ignorant of the advantages of peace, complacency and convention Men in the street call (dub) him a learned man although (truly speaking) he is not a learned person In a hurry, he has picked up much (knowledge) His little (shallow and superficial) knowledge is better than his vast (so called deep) knowledge, so much so, that when he had quenched his thirst from the stinky water of ignorance and had filled up his mind with useless and obsolete knowledge, he became Qazi He took up the responsibility of disentangling and unravelling complicated problems If any difficult and knotty problem comes to him for solution, he puts forth (gives) illogical absurd and weak arguments for its solution, and believes that his decision is right (As a matter of fact he himself is doubtful of the correctness of his solution) He is entangled in the cobweb of a spider He himself does not know whether he gave the correct answer or not (to the problem) If by chance he gave (him) the correct answer, he fears lest it should be wrong And if he gave (him) the wrong answer, he sits in the expectation that it may be true

He is (totally) ignorant and gropes in darkness and suffers from night blindness (nyctalopia) (i.e. He understands nothing and sees nothing) He never received true and proper education. He narrates the traditions and sayings (of the Holy Prophet) just as wind scatters chaff and dry grass. By God! I say that if any question is put to him, he can not reply correctly. He does not deserve the post (of Qazi) which is offered to him. (He is so much ignorant) that he does not even dream that (true) knowledge lies in what he denies (and denounces). He does not know that beyond the reach of his comprehension and understanding, there is some way for others.

When he does not understand anything, he keeps it a secret from others (lest his ignorance, shallow knowledge and lack of common sense should be exposed to others), for he fully knows and realizes his ignorance. The innocent (not guilty) persons who were murdered and assassinated due to his wrong and merciless judgments (decisions) are complainants (against him to God) and Hereditary Estates are weeping and crying (against his wrong decisions).

I complain to God against such persons as pass their life in ignorance and die while misguiding and misleading others. If the Holy Quran is read (and interpreted) correctly, it has absolutely no value for them. But if the Holy Quran is changed and its letters and words are misplaced (and misinterpreted), then it is the most precious and valuable treasure for them. They hate virtues most and love evils most.

---

## HIS SERMON No 23.

### On Ashas Bin Qais

How can you understand my gain and loss? God has cursed you. People condemn you. O wicked son of a wicked father! O hypocrite, the son of an infidel! Once you were imprisoned before accepting Islam and once after accepting Islam. On neither of these occasions your wealth and blood stopped you from going to jail. The wicked person who has made his people fight among themselves should be considered

to be an enemy by his near and dear ones. He should be regarded to be faithless and unreliable by others

---

### **HIS SERMON No. 24.**

#### **Warning from the dead**

If you had seen the scenes which those of you who died have seen, you would have cried and your hearts would have trembled, you would have quietly submitted to the will of God. But the mysteries which the dead have seen are hidden from your eyes, but the time is at hand when this screen shall be removed. But if you have eyes to see, and ears to hear, all these scenes are already shown to you, every event is related to you. If you are worthy of accepting guidance and you want guidance, the path of guidance has been clearly explained to you. The conditions of the past people are before your eyes for warnings. You are given threats. You are prohibited from something. God appointed Prophets from amongst men for preaching. (No other creation was entrusted with this responsible work.)

---

### **HIS SERMON No. 25**

#### **An Advice.**

Your end is before you. The day which is called the Day of Judgment is before you. It will make you stand on that day. But you are becoming light (mean) to face the Day of Judgment. Verily, the persons going before you are waiting for you.

---

### **HIS SERMON No. 26**

#### **On the murder of Hazrat Usman.**

Beware! the Satan has gathered his army. His forces are multiplying. It is due to the fact that tyranny and fabrication attract people towards them. They blame me



without rhyme and reason They did not do justice to me They demand from me the right which they themselves have left, they demand from me blood for blood which they themselves have shed If I had participated in his murder, they also could not be acquitted of it But if they murdered him without my permission, it is they who are guilty Their (repeated) demand for taking revenge upon the murderers (of Hazrat Usman) is nothing but to demand milk from a woman whose milk is dried up Now they again want to revive the innovations of (Hazrat) Usman which are done away with O persons who suffered losses and who invite me to war, come before me I am, under all circumstances, satisfied with the teachings of the Holy Quran and the Holy Prophet If they refuse to abide by the orders of the Quran and the Prophet, the sword which helps the upholders of Truth and destroys those of falsehood shall settle the matter It is surprising that they invite me to war May God curse them ! War can never frighten me to submission I am not afraid of death I have absolutely no doubt in Islam

---

### HIS SERMON No 27.

#### Do not be envious and Love your Relatives

The Blessings of God descend upon the earth like rain-drops, and every person gets his share according to his fate If any one of you find any person having more children, friends or wealth, you should not create seditions Verily, the Muslim who puts on the dress of meanness is like a gambler who is importunate of winning the game rather than losing it Similarly the Muslim who is fed up with dishonesty and breach of trust desires one of these two things from God—either he prays for death or he prays for his livelihood to God Of course he will be gifted with children and wealth Besides these he shall get the blessings of Faith Undoubtedly, the *children and wealth are the fields of this world and good actions are the fields of the next world* Sometimes God confers both these blessings upon a nation So be afraid of God Do not do good deeds to show to the people, for God does not like a hypocrite and leaves him to his own fate We pray to God

## HIS SERMON No. 31.

### The blessings of Jihad.

Jihad (Islamic War) is one of the doors of Heaven. God opens it for His friends and saints. If (Jihad) is the dress of piety. It is a useful and beneficial armour. It is a strong shield. If a man gives it up, God will make him wear the robe of disgrace. He shall get the wrapper of misfortunes. He shall be disgraced. He shall not get justice and fairplay.

Beware ! I invite you day and night openly and secretly to fight against this nation (the followers of Muawiyah). I tell you to attack them before they attack us. By God ! the people who have fought in their homes have been disgraced. You are shifting your responsibilities to others which will result in your ruin and destruction. Your houses shall be occupied. Look here ! this brother (of Muawiyah) is entering Ambar with his cavalry. He has killed Hasan bin Hasan Bakri, the governor of that place. He has displaced your cavalry from its arsenal. I am told that one of his soldiers entered the house of a non Muslim woman and snatched all her ornaments and jewels. She could not repulse him but she cried for help. His army returned with a huge booty. None of them was wounded nor was any drop of their blood shed. Now if any Muslim dies out of grief on this tragic event, he can not be blamed. His death will be rather a tolerable blessing. It is wonderful and heart rending that though they are misguided and mistaken, yet they are united, and you are the upholders of a true cause, yet you are disunited and divided. May you become the targets of the arrows ! They murder you and you can not destroy them. They fight against you and you evade fighting. The orders of God are defied and sins are committed and you see these things at

I wished not to see and recognize you. By God! I am ashamed at your sight. May God destroy you! You have wounded my heart. You have made me awfully angry. You have always made me drink the draught of sorrow. You have upset all my plans due to your disobedience and sins. The Quraish now say that the son of Abi Talib is undoubtedly brave but he is ignorant of the arts of warfare. May God bless them! Is or was there any one of them who was more steadfast than me in war? Doubtless I took part in war when I was hardly twenty years old and now I am sixty years old. But suggestions and plans are of little value to a man who does not act upon them.

---

## HIS SERMON No. 32.

### On the Evils of the World.

Doubtless the world has turned its face against you. The next world is about to come before you. Beware! the persons who suffer today (in this world) shall surpass others tomorrow (on the Day of Judgment). Their destination is Paradise and the end of the worldly pleasures is the fire of hell. Do you not repent of your sins before your death? Do you not do good deeds before the Day of Retribution? Remember that you are passing through the days of desires after which there is death. If a man does good deeds in this life, he shall be rewarded for them and death or sudden death shall not harm him. The life of a man who has not done good deeds in this world before his death is wasted. Death greatly harmed him. Beware! Offer your prayers with the same zeal and enthusiasm with which you work in dangers. Be careful! I do not see anything better than Heaven although its lover is sleeping; and I do not see anything worse than Hell although the person who runs away from it also sleeps. Beware! If truth does not benefit a man, falsehood surely harms him. If guidance does not help a man, ignorance leads him to ruin and destruction.

Beware! You are destined to die and you are directed to lay up provisions (for the next world). I am afraid lest you should become victims of avarice and lest you should have

inordinate ambitions Live in the world but lay up provisions for the next world which will benefit you on the day of Judgment

---

## HIS SERMON No 33

### Censure on his Companions

O People! Your bodies are gathered in one house but your ambitions are different Your talks melt the hardest stone but your actions tempt the enemy to attack you In your meetings you boast and bluff but when you have to fight, you remember nothing but run away from the battle field You are not at all useful to the man who calls you for help And he who suffers troubles for you can never get ease and comfort Your lame excuses and false pretexts are due to your ignorance You are like a borrower who puts off payment of debts A disgraced person can not prevent a tyrant from his oppression Listen! No person can attain truth without effort Where will you take shelter after the destruction of your homes? Under whose lead will you carry on war after me? By God! You have badly deceived me To be successful with your help is nothing but a failure He who attacks the enemy with you is attacking the enemy with a broken arrow By God! I have absolutely no faith in you, nor do I want your help I cannot frighten the enemy (with your help) What has become of you? What is the remedy of your disease? The enemies are also men like you Is your promise devoid of faith and knowledge? Have you become indifferent due to your sinful lives? Do you expect any good in any unlawful thing?

---

## HIS SERMON No 34

### On the Murder of Hazrat Usman

If I had ordered him to be killed I would have certainly been his murderer If I had prevented people from his murder, I would have been his helper But inspite of this his helper cannot say that because I did not help him he is superior to

me Now I want to mention the innovations which he introduced during his caliphate Now we blame him for those innovations This is bad for you On the Day of Judgment, God will give His orders for him who introduced innovations and for those also who blame him

---

### **HIS SERMON No. 35.**

**His orders to Abdullah Bin Abbas on the occasion of the Battle of Jamal.**

Never see Talha If you see him, you will find him like a bullock whose horns are inclined towards the back He is riding on a refractory camel and calls him docile But you must see Zobair, for he is a man of mild nature Tell him that the son of your maternal uncle has sent you this message, 'You recognized my rights in Hedjaz but you broke your pledge in Iraq What made you deviate from it ?'

---

### **HIS SERMON No. 36.**

**Advice to his Companions**

O People ! We have seen with eyes wide open the world We have found it tyrant and cruel We have found the time ungrateful (It is an age) when the benefactor is considered to be an evil doer, and the tyrant becomes more proud and arrogant In this age we can not take advantage of our knowledge, and we can not find out those things of which we are ignorant We are not afraid of God until some catastrophe befalls us Mankind is divided into four classes (1) There are some persons who are prevented from creating dissensions in this world partly because of their lack of common sense and courage and partly because of the fact that they are afraid of losing their property (2) There are some persons who have drawn their swords out of their sheaths They are openly playing mischiefs They are gathering their cavalry and infantry They have made the accumulation of wealth the aim and object of their life They have sold

the Book of God and none of them had ever claimed to be a Prophet. The Holy Prophet led them to the straight path till they reached their destination and salvation. Now their spears became straight and their stones became stationary. By God! I co-operated with the Holy Prophet in his great Mission. They were subdued but I was not tired and I was not afraid of any one. My present journey is also like the past ones. I will make holes and tear the screens (of falsehood) and the Truth shall prevail. The Quraish cannot prevent me.

By God! I have fought against them when they were infidels. I am again ready to fight against them when they have fallen in love with worldly gains and achievements. Undoubtedly, just as I was their master so am I now.

---

### HIS SERMON No 38

(He delivered this sermon to inspire the people to fight against the Syrians)

Alas! You have greatly disappointed me. Do you prefer this world to the next world? Do you like your honour to be replaced by disgrace? Alas! When I invite you for Jihad (religious war) you turn your eyes as if you are suffering the agony of death. You are bewildered and perplexed at my invitation as if you have turned mad. I cannot trust you. You are not the soldiers whom I should invite to fight against the enemy. Alas! You are like the camels whose drivers are dead. When they are gathered from one direction they disperse in another direction. By God! it is very bad to fight with your help. The enemy can easily deceive you but you cannot deceive them. The enemy is capturing the neighbouring towns but you do not feel this loss. The enemy is over-vigilant and over-watchful whereas you are quite careless and indifferent. By God! the persons who flee away from the battle fields have always been defeated and disgraced. By God! I believe that if you have to face adversities in the war and there is much blood shed you shall desert. Ali Ibn-e-Abi Talib just as the head is severed from the body. By God! he who allows the enemy to come in from his side eats his own flesh, breaks his own bones, tears his own skin. Undoubtedly, his heart is very weak and he is a coward.

their faith for worldly gains They have acquired them either by the help of cavalry or by delivering sermons on pulpits It is very bad to sell one's religion (and conscience) for the sake of this world (3) There are some persons who want worldly gains by prayers They do not want the blessings of the next world by their good deeds in this world They are greedy and avaricious people They are over careful and cautious to gain their ends in this world They are hypocrites and pretend themselves to be holy for worldly gains (4) There are some persons who have no worldly ambitions because they are extremely helpless and have no courage and no resources They are quite helpless and hence they have adopted this attitude They are now contented and satisfied They have put on the robes of pious and saintly people It is nothing short of hypocrisy They are thinking of worldly gains day and night Now there is another small group The recital of praise and names of God and the fear of the Day of Judgment have made them indifferent to worldly gains and achievements They always shed tears due to the fear of the Day of Judgment They are like those persons who are away from their homes and relatives They have broken hearts They are calm and quiet They pray to God sincerely and earnestly like the afflicted ones Alas ! they are unknown and disgraced because they are afraid of the enemies

Alas ! they are leading a very miserable life They have held their tongues but their hearts are very much wounded They advised and instructed the people but they were disappointed and discouraged (because none listened to them) They were disgraced and humiliated Many of them have been killed, so their numerical strength is very much reduced O people ! the world and the ornaments of this world are of little value Take warnings from your ancestors before the posterity takes lessons from your lives Renounce this world altogether To love this world is very bad The world has always been faithless to those persons who have loved it

---

### HIS SERMON No 37.

Delivered at Zi-Waqar while going to fight against the Basrites.

O People ! God created Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be on him) in Arabia when none of the Arabs had read

the Book of God and none of them had ever claimed to be a Prophet. The Holy Prophet led them to the straight path till they reached their destination and salvation. Now their spears became straight and their stones became stationary. By God! I co-operated with the Holy Prophet in his great Mission. They were subdued but I was not tired and I was not afraid of any one. My present journey is also like the past ones. I will make holes and tear the screens (of falsehood) and the Truth shall prevail. The Quraish cannot prevent me.

By God! I have fought against them when they were infidels. I am again ready to fight against them when they have fallen in love with worldly gains and achievements. Undoubtedly just as I was their master so am I now.

---

### HIS SERMON No. 38.

(He delivered this sermon to inspire the people to fight against the Syrians.)

Alas! You have greatly disappointed me. Do you prefer this world to the next world? Do you like your honour to be replaced by disgrace? Alas! When I invite you for Jihad (religious war) you turn your eyes as if you are suffering the agony of death. You are bewildered and perplexed at my invitation as if you have turned mad. I cannot trust you. You are not the soldiers whom I should invite to fight against the enemy. Alas! You are like the camels whose drivers are dead. When they are gathered from one direction, they disperse in another direction. By God! it is very bad to fight with your help. The enemy can easily deceive you, but you cannot deceive them. The enemy is capturing the neighbouring towns but you do not feel this loss. The enemy is over-vigilant and over-watchful whereas you are quite careless and indifferent. By God! the persons who flee away from the battle fields have always been defeated and disgraced. By God! I believe that if you have to face adversities in the war, and there is much blood shed, you shall desert. Ali Ibn-e-Abi Talib just as the head is severed from the body. By God! he who allows the enemy to come in from his side eats his own flesh, breaks his own bones, tears his own skin. Undoubtedly, his heart is very weak and he is a coward.



O People ! You are at full liberty to follow in their footsteps if you like As regards me, I shall rain the sword of Masharaf upon the heads of the enemies in such a way that the bones of their heads shall be broken to pieces, their arms and legs shall be cut off Then the will of God shall be known to all

O People ! I have rights over you and you have rights over me I have to advise you to increase your rewards to educate you lest you should become ignorant and to teach you good manners so that you may act upon them Your duty is to be faithful and loyal to me Listen to my advice in my presence and absence both Come to me when I call you and obey the orders which are given to you

---

### HIS SERMON No. 39

*(After the decision of the Arbitration—Battle of Simin )*

God be praised Time has set before me a great ordeal I testify that there is no god but God and Muhammad is His Servant and Apostle O People ! let it be known to you that disobedience to a kind and experienced adviser and learned and wise person brings about misfortune and shame I gave you orders regarding Caliphate and the appointment of an arbitrator and I gave you the gist of my plans and schemes Would you had obeyed me ! You disobeyed me like merciless enemies and turned your faces against me like the sinful breakers of the oath of allegiance I became doubtful of the success of my advice Even flint became miserly in giving fire Now our condition is such as is expressed by the tribe of Hawazan I gave you sound advice in the Manzil Manarutul Lawa but you did not act upon it and when on the next morning its benefit was revealed, you began to remember it

---

### HIS SERMON No 40.

*(This Address was delivered to frighten the Kharijites )*

I warn you that the morning may dawn over you in this condition when your corpses may be scattered around the

stream, your killed ones may lie in blood and dust in this valley and you may be reduced to this state that you may neither have any tangible proof for your action

Listen ! the love of this world is responsible for your destruction Your false estimate has entangled you in this trap I advised you against this arbitration but you disregarded my suggestion like enemies so much so that I had to yield to your wishes Your party consists of a few foolish persons I do not intend to harm you but you yourselves bring destruction upon you

---

### HIS SERMON No. 41.

#### On Himself.

I carried out the orders of God when other persons were indolent I praised God when other persons were sceptic about Him I revealed myself when other persons were in the state of concealment I passed my days with the light of the Prophet when other persons were in darkness My voice was the weakest of all, but I was the highest of all in piety Now I flew up with the power of penance and the strength of Jihad In this fight, I remained steadfast in my place like a mountain which can not be shaken from its place even by the gale and storm None dared to find fault with me, nor could any one dare to speak against me in my absence Every weak person is dear to me till I take his due from others and every strong person is weak before me till I make him give the rights of others I have gladly accepted the will and decree of God Do you think that I blame the Holy Prophet ? By God ! I am the first person to accept him as Prophet How can I be the first in falsifying him ? When I critically studied the situation, I arrived at the definite conclusion that it was better for me to bow to the will of God rather than ask the people to pay allegiance to me

---

### HIS SERMON No 42

#### On Doubt

Doubt is called doubt because it bears some resemblance to truth The light of the friends of God is certain and they

always lead the people on the right path but the enemies of God always misguide the people and take them to wrong path Now he who is afraid of death can not escape death and he who loves eternity cannot remain in this world for good

---

### HIS SERMON No 43

(Malik Ibne Kaah was appointed Governor by Hazrat Ali at Aynuttaman He had only one hundred horsemen No man bin Bashir a general of Muawiyah attacked him with two thousand horsemen Malik Ibne Kaah fled away from that place and informed Hazrat Ali of the perilous situation of that place Hazrat Ali thereupon called the Kufutes and delivered this sermon )

I rule over a nation which does not obey me When I call them they do not respect and respond to my call What are you waiting for to help your faith ? Have you no faith which may inspire you to wage a religious war ? Have you no sense of shame ? I cry for help I call you But you neither listen to me nor do you obey my orders till the result of this indifferent attitude is revealed to you Then you shall not be able to protect yourselves and you shall not get any thing I invited you to help your brothers but you spoke harshly like a wounded camel You are too lethargic and indolent to move from your place like a camel who has become quite helpless because of the wounds on his back A few weak indolent and confounded persons from amongst you have offered their services to help me but it seems as if they are driven to death which is waiting for them

---

### HIS SERMON No 44

#### About the Kharijites

Their saying that there is no order but the order of God is perfectly true but their intention is bad Men have no alternative but to have an Amir or chief If the Amir is pious and good Muslims will do good deeds for the next

world during his reign , and if the Amir is irreligious and bad, then the infidels shall get worldly gains during his time and this latter period lasts only for a short time If there is an Amir, booty and taxes are realized People fight against the enemy under his lead The roads are safe The weak persons get their rights from the strong ones The good people live in peace and comfort and have no fear from bad characters

There is another report regarding this matter When Hazrat Ali heard of this saying of the Kharijites— 'There is no order but the order of God'—he remarked that he was waiting for the orders of God in the matter He said —

'During the time of good Amirs, the pious Muslims do good deeds for the next world , while during the rule of bad Amirs bad characters accumulate worldly gains so much so that the period of their rule comes to an end and death overtakes them

---

## HIS SERMON No 45.

### On Fidelity.

Undoubtedly fidelity and keeping the promise are the companions of Truth I do not see any shield which protects a person more than the keeping of promise He who always keeps before his eyes the Day of Judgment can never be faithless Alas ! we are born in such an age when most people regard cunningness as wisdom The ignorant persons consider them to be wise May God kill such (cunning) persons for they deceive others The person who understands the cunningness of the people also knows the ways and methods of cunningness , but he also understands that God does not approve of it and so he consciously and knowingly does not practise it, though he has full control over it But a person who does not care for the prohibitions of God considers it to be a blessing and takes full advantage of it

## **HIS SERMON No 46.**

### **On the Evils of the World**

O People! I am afraid of two things from you First you may not be victims of avarice secondly you may not have inordinate ambitions Understand it clearly that avarice prevents a man from the right path and inordinate ambitions make a man forget the next world Beware! the world and its pleasures turn their faces against the people quickly and no one lives in this world for good Beware! the next world is before you Each of these worlds has its sons So you become the sons of the next world and you need not become the sons of this world for every son will be attached to his mother on the day of Judgment Let it be known to you that today is the day of action and not the Day of Judgment and tomorrow shall be the day of Judgment and not the day of action

---

## **HIS SERMON No 47**

(When Hazrat Ali sent Jarir bin Abdullah Bajali as an ambassador to Muawiyah, people informed him (Hazrat Ali) that it seemed that Muawiyah would not yield to him )

I must make preparations to fight against the Syrians inspite of the fact that I have sent my ambassador Jarir I have sent him there simply to close the door of discussion Even if the Syrians have good intentions and want to yield to me I am checking them from it Jarir can not stay there after the expiry of the period I have fixed for him until of course, Muawiyah deceives and imprisons him or he turns against me In these circumstances I have to make delay In the mean while you also take rest I do not consider your preparations of war bad I have fully considered over the pros and cons of the situation There are only two possibilities—(1) War or (2) Heathenism You know it already that he made innovations in Islam People got an opportunity to blame him and they began to pass sarcastic remarks upon him so much so that they took revenge upon him and changed his condition (killed him)

• **HIS SERMON No. 48.**

**On Masqala Ibne Habir Sheebani.**

May God curse Masqalr ! He acted as chief but fled away as slave The panegyrists had hardly opened their lips when he made them quiet He had hardly testified to the panegyrics of his panegyrists when he made them write satires upon him If he had stayed here and had not run away, we would have taken only as much money from him as he could easily afford to pay and waited for the payment of the rest till his wealth increased

---

**HIS SERMON No. 49.**

**In praise of God.**

All praise is due to God No one is deprived of His favours None is destitute of His blessings None is despondent of His forgiveness He who prays to Him does not become proud His favours are never lost His blessings never cease This world is soon subject to destruction Its inhabitants are about to go out of it To the worldly people, it is a sweet and green thing It makes haste for its lover But its verdure and pleasures are doubtful to a wise and thoughtful person You pass through it with good actions for the next world

---

**HIS SERMON NO. 50.**

**(Hazrat Ali delivered this sermon while he was going to Syria for Jihad )**

O God ! I seek protection from Thee in the great ordeal, in the difficulties of journey, in times of sorrows and griefs, and appeal to Thee to save my family, their lives and property from the evil eyes of the people O God ! Thou art my Master in my journey and Thou art the Caliph of my family These two attributes are not found in any one but Thee , for he who is a Caliph can not be a companion and he who is a companion cannot be a Caliph

## HIS SERMON No. 51.

### On the condition of Kufa.

O Kufa ! I am attached with you, but you are over-stretched like the skins of the Akaz market *Catastrophies* grind you and it seems that you are riding on earth quakes Undoubtedly, I know that God destroyed the tyrant who cast an evil glance at you (persecuted you)

---

## HIS SERMON No 52.

(Hazrat Ali delivered this sermon while he was going to Syria )

All praise is due to God So long as the darkness of night lasts, and stars shine and set, all praise is due to that Creator *Whose blessings and favours never stop and Whose excellences* are unique and matchless Let it be known to you that I have already sent two armies and ordered to station on the bank of the Euphrates till further orders Now I wish to pass by the Euphrates to the tribe of Muslims living on banks of the Tigris along with you Then I wish to see the people of Madayan and make them ready to fight with you against the enemy

---

## HIS SERMON No 53.

### On God.

The Creator of the worlds Who is hidden deserves all praise *The different objects of nature prove His existence* The physical eye cannot see Him and if because of His excessive light a person cannot see Him, he has no right to deny His existence He who has recognized the manifestations of God has no power to see Him He surpasses all in height and superiority and nothing can be superior to Him He is the nearest to us and nothing can be nearer to us than He *Though He is very High and Sublime, yet nothing is away from Him* He is very near us yet it does not mean that we have become His equals Wisdom cannot reach the bottom and secrets of His attributes, yet nothing prevents any person from understanding Him Even an atheist in the heart of his heart feels the existence of God God is above the doubts and suspicion of the atheists

## **HIS SERMON No. 54.**

### **On the causes of Seditions.**

Undoubtedly the root causes of all the seditions are avarice and obedience to innovations in religion. The Holy Book of God opposes all innovations and those persons who have nothing to do with religion follow them. If falsehood had been separated from the mixture of truth, the path of God would not have been hidden from the seekers of truth. And if truth had not been mixed with falsehood, the disobedient people would not have spoken a single word against truth, but the Creator of the worlds has given both these attributes to a man. He has a mixture of both these qualities—truth and falsehood. Now the Satan rules over his friends and companions and those who are gifted with more good points in them escape from the traps of the Satan.

---

## **HIS SERMON No 55**

(In the battle of Siffin Muawiyah's army occupied the Euphrates and stopped its water to be used by Hazrat Ali's party)

The army of the enemy has demanded from you the food of the battle. Now either you should make unnecessary delay in this disgrace and humiliation or quench the thirst of your swords with the blood of the enemy and you quench your thirst with the water of the Euphrates. You should understand it clearly that if you live after sustaining defeat from the enemy, such a disgraced life is equivalent to death and if you are killed while fighting bravely with the enemy, it is a real life. Beware! Muawiyah has gathered a party of misguided people from whom he has hidden the path of virtues and he has made their throats the targets of the arrows of death.

---

## **HIS SERMON No 56**

### **On the Evils of the World**

Beware! The world is subject to decay and destruction. It declares its annihilation. It does not treat any one kindly. It turns its back in a great hurry. Alas! this world prepares



the graves of destruction for its inhabitants. It attracts its neighbours also to death. The pleasures of this world result in much bitterness in the next world. The transparent objects of this world are regarded to be opaque in the next world. Everything in this world is mortal, perishable and destructible.

O People, be ready to leave this home whose inhabitants are destined to perish. Take care lest the worldly desires should overcome you and you should consider your life to be very long. By God! If you cry like the mother separated from her baby, lament like the pigeon, lament and pray like the monks who have renounced this world either for spiritual development or forgiveness of the past omissions and commissions, all these have much less value as compared with the reward you shall get if you follow the suggestions I give you. By God! If your hearts melt away, your eyes shed blood instead of tears, and your eyes may not bear this sight, and you live in this condition till the world lasts, even then your indefatigable and untiring efforts can be no match to the grand and numerous blessings which God always showers upon man. You can never return the thanks of God for the guidance which He has given you.

Hazrat Ali refers to the animals which are sacrificed on the occasion of Eid ud Duha.

If the ears and eyes of an animal are safe and sound, it is worth sacrificing, but if the horns are broken, its ears and eyes are not sound, and it goes limping to the altar, it is not worth sacrificing.

---

## HIS SERMON No 57

### About the Battle of Siffin

People came to me in large numbers just as thirsty camels when set free by their drivers at the halting place gather together. I was under the impression at their sight that they would either kill me or they would fight among themselves and kill one another. I fully considered over the pros and cons of the situation and I found no alternative but to fight against the enemy or disregard the teachings of the Holy

Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be on him) But I adopted the first course because to suffer worldly afflictions is much easier than the punishment on the Day of Judgment

---

## HIS SERMON No 58

### On the delay of the Battle of Siffin

That I hesitate to start the war is according to your opinion, due to the fear of death By God! I am not at all afraid of death You think that I am not fully convinced whether or not I should kill the Syrians By God! I would not have delayed the prosecution of the war but I wish that the misguided party may see me and wiser counsel may still prevail, for I prefer to guide and lead rather than to massacre them in this condition when they are in darkness, although the party is bent upon doing mischief

---

## HIS SERMON No 59

### About war during the life-time of the Prophet

During the life time of the Holy Prophet, we used to kill our fathers, sons, brothers and uncles and it increased our faith and submission to the will of God In our extreme adversities and misfortunes we patiently made preparations for Jihad (religious war) There were single combats One person from each party used to come forward They fought with each other desperately till one of them was killed Sometimes we defeated our enemies and sometimes we sustained defeats at the hands of our enemies When God tried out truth and honesty, He gave final defeat to our enemies and ultimate victory was ours Islam then became firm and strong It became popular among the Arabs By my life if we had been vacillating and lethargic like you in Jihad, there would never have been pillar of faith and the branches of belief would never have been fresh and green By God! You are shedding your own blood and giving way to shame and disgrace

## HIS SERMON No 60

### On Muawiyah

Certainly after my death you shall be overcome by a person whose throat will be wide and whose stomach will be very big He shall eat up whatever he will get He will demand a thing which is not available You must kill him but you will not be able to kill him

Beware ! He will ask you to abuse me You act upon his orders for it will increase my rank and you will be safe from him As regards my displeasure against you for it you need not be worried about it and you need not be displeased with me for I am a Muslim by birth I am the first to accept Islam and leave Mecca for Madina

---

## HIS SERMON No 61

(Hazrat Ali invited the Kharijites to join him in a battle against the Syrians, but they replied as follows —

You appointed judges against the command of God and His Prophet Now you desire to fight against the Syrians which is in keeping with your evil will If you confess your having turned a Kafir and that you repent for it we are ready to help you otherwise we shall fight with you Hazrat Ali thereupon said) —

May the storm of punishment from God come over you Do you expect me to confess my apostacy after I have accepted Islam and taken part in religious wars with the Holy Prophet ? If I do it undoubtedly I have gone astray and I am not one of those who are on the straight path You have become very bad and you have relapsed to (heathenism)

Beware ! After me you shall be disgraced and humiliated and you shall have to face sharp sword In future the tyrant will follow in your footsteps and your bad examples shall be imitated by the posterity

### HIS SERMON No 62

(When Hazrat Ali sent his army to fight against the Kharijites, he was informed that the army of the enemy had crossed the bridge of the Nehrawan He, thereupon, said —)

They shall be massacred near the Tigres By God ! Hardly ten of them shall escape alive and hardly ten of you will be killed

---

### HIS SERMON No 63

(After the battle of Nehrawan, Hazrat Ali was informed that all the Kharijites had perished He thereupon remarked —)

By God ! What you say is not true They are still to be born. When their leader shall appear, they will continue to perish till their future generations will be thieves and robbers

Hazrat Ali then said about the Kharijites —

Do not kill the Kharijites after me, for he who makes mistakes in search after Truth is better than the man who is on the lookout of falsehood and gets it

---

### HIS SERMON No 64

(When some persons informed him that Ibne Muljam and others wanted to make a surprise attack upon him and kill him, he said) —

The shield of God shall protect me When the time of my death comes, that shield shall hand over me to death Then the arrow of death shall not miss its aim and its wound shall not be cured

---

### HIS SERMON No 65

#### On the Evils of the World.

Beware ! The world is a house whose inhabitants can get protection from punishment while they are in it and *whatever is obtained for this world can never give salvation*

This world is an examination place. People get entangled in this world and then they are examined. Now those persons who have sought worldly pleasures shall be excluded and they shall have to render account for the enjoyment of such pleasures, but those persons who have done here good deeds for the next world shall get their rewards there. Verily to the wise people, this world is as valueless as the shadow of a traveller which was seen spreading a little while ago, but which has completely disappeared now.

---

## HIS SERMON No. 66.

### On preparation for Death.

O People! Be afraid of the punishment of God. Be pious and make haste to meet your death with good actions. It is much better for you to buy a thing which shall remain with you for good rather than a thing which you will lose very soon. You are destined to leave this world. Be ready for death which overshadows you. Be a nation which wakes up when it is called. Let it be clearly known to you that this world is not your real home. You change it because God has not created you in vain and He has not left you at random. Every moment of your life is passing swiftly. A man leads either virtuous life or evil life. Do good deeds in this world which may help you on the day of Judgment. He who fears God, advises himself, repents of his omissions and commissions, and controls his passions, saves himself from the wrath of God. The condition of the evil person is this. Death is hidden from his eyes. His inordinate ambitions deceive him. The Satan induces him to devils and makes him delay repentance. The man becomes fearless of God and indulges in sins. The Satan keeps him in that condition till death approaches him in his negligence and unmindfulness. I pity him because he can lead a virtuous life but he does not do it. His life ends in utter failure. O God! make us among those persons whose worldly blessings do not make them proud, whose worldly gains do not lead them astray and who do not feel ashamed after their deaths.

## HIS SERMON NO. 67.

### In Praise of God.

All praise is due to that Almighty God Who is unique and unsurpassed and Who has no beginning and no end. Any thing which may be called one excepting God is little, and excepting God, any one who has titles, power and pelf, is disgraced. Excepting Him, any one who is strong is weak. Excepting Him, every master is slave. Excepting Him, every learned man is a pupil. Besides God, none can hear very faint voice. Loud sound may turn him deaf. His power of hearing is deprived of distant voices. Besides God, even the sharpest eye cannot see light colours and insignificant bodies. Besides God, whatever is apparent is apparent. Besides God, whatever is hidden is hidden. He did not create His creatures for His power, for the extension of His empire or for fear of great catastrophes of time. He did not create His creatures to take their help against His rivals. He has trained His creatures. As He is the sole Creator, He has created all things. He has made bad people also. He is not dissolved in any thing, nor can it be said that He exists in it. He is not far away from anything. He is not tired of creating things. He does not doubt His decisions. His decisions are inevitable and unavoidable, His knowledge is strong and His orders are binding. We should expect blessings from His punishments. We should be afraid of His (worldly) blessings.

---

## HIS SERMON No. 68.

### On the occasion of the Battle of Siffin.

O MUSLIMS! Fear God. Enjoy peace of mind and contentment of heart. Attack the enemies desperately for it keeps the swords of the enemies away from the heads. Throw away your rotten armours. Sound your swords before taking them out from the sheaths. Fight very cautiously with your spears. Kill the enemies with your swords. Remember it well that God's help is with you. You are under the command of the son of the Prophet's uncle. Attack the enemies again. It is shameful to retreat. Disgrace is the result of retreat. You shall be punished for it on the

## HIS SERMON NO 67.

### In Praise of God.

All praise is due to that Almighty God Who is unique and un surpassed and Who has no beginning and no end Any thing which may be called one excepting God is little , and excepting God, any one who has titles, power and pelf, is disgraced Excepting Him, any one who is strong is weak Excepting Him, every master is slave Excepting Him, every learned man is a pupil Besides God, none can hear very faint voice Loud sound may turn him deaf His power of hearing is deprived of distant voices Besides God, even the sharpest eye cannot see light colours and insignificant bodies Besides God, whatever is apparent is apparent Besides God, whatever is hidden is hidden He did not create His creatures for His power, for the extension of His empire or for fear of great catastrophes of time He did not create His creatures to take their help against His rivals He has trained His creatures As He is the sole Creator, He has created all things He has made bad people also He is not dissolved in any thing, nor can it be said that He exists in it He is not far away from anything He is not tired of creating things He does not doubt His decisions His decisions are inevitable and unavoidable, His knowledge is strong and His orders are binding We should expect blessings from His punishments We should be afraid of His (worldly) blessings

---

## HIS SERMON No. 68.

### On the occasion of the Battle of Siffin.

O MUSLIMS! Fear God Enjoy peace of mind and contentment of heart Attack the enemies desperately for it keeps the swords of the enemies away from the heids Throw away your rotten armours Sound your swords before taking them out from the sheaths Fight very cautiously with your spears Kill the enemies with your swords Remember it well that God's help is with you You are under the command of the son of the Prophet's uncle Attack the enemies again It is shameful to retreat Disgrace is the result of retreat You shall be punished for it on the

Day of Judgment Face death cheerfully Overpower the army of the enemy Rain your swords on yonder tent in which a Satan is hidden and he tries to advance Fight till truth prevails and God's help makes you victorious You are very sublime and God is with you He will not set naught your good deeds and the sufferings of Jihad (religious war)

---

### HIS SERMON No 69

(After the death of the Holy Prophet (May peace of God be on him) when Hazrat Ali was informed that the Muhajirin and the Ansar were disputing on the question of Caliphate in the Saqifa Banī Sa'ada he enquired about the opinion of the Ansar He was told that the Ansar wanted one Amir each from amongst the Muhajirin and the Ansar He thereupon said as follows —)

Why did the Muhajirin not quote this will of the Holy Prophet? Treat the virtuous Ansar kindly and forgive the bad ones! *The companions asked him how it could be inferred from it that they could not be Caliphs* He said —If any one of them could be Caliph there was no need of entrusting them to others He then asked them about the reason of the Quraish They said According to them the Quraish belong to the family of the Prophet He then remarked 'They have attached them with the family tree of the Prophet but they have ruined its fruits'

---

### HIS SERMON No 70

On the murder of Muhammad Bin Abī Bakr, the Governor of Egypt

I wanted to appoint Hashim bin Atība the Governor of Egypt and if I had appointed him there he would not have left Egypt to the enemy and he would not have given the enemy any opportunity to occupy it as Muhammad did But the praise of Hashim does not imply the censure of Muhammad Undoubtedly I loved Muhammad and he was the son of my wife



## HIS SERMON No 71.

### Censure of his hypocritical companions.

How far should I please you like the driver of a camel whose hump is wounded or like a man who is overcareful in the use of his old and rotten clothes (because when he sews up one part, the other part is torn) ? When a regiment of the Syrian army comes before you, you shut your doors out of fear By God he whom you will help shall be disgraced because you will desert him in the thick of the fight He who sends you to fight acts unwisely By God ! Your numerical strength is great in your house but on the battlefield you are only a few in number I know very well how you can be put on the right path May God disgrace you ! Do you not recognize truth as much as you recognize falsehood ? Can you not make as much effort in effacing falsehood as you make in hiding falsehood ?

---

## HIS SERMON No. 72

### On himself.

I was sitting I slept and dreamt that the Holy Prophet Mohammad (Peace of God be on him) came to me I told him that I suffered much at the hands of his followers He told me to curse them I said, "O God ! Give me better companions than them and appoint over them a tyrant ruler who may cruelly treat them "

---

## HIS SERMON No. 73.

### On the censure of Iraqis

After praise to God and prayer (for peace & blessings on Muhammad the Holy Prophet) let it be known to you, O people of Iraq you are like a pregnant woman who delivers the child before due time and whose husband dies, who lives as a widow for a long time and who has a distant relative to support her By God ! I did not come to you of my own accord but Fate brought me here I am told that you call

me a liar May God kill you ! Tell me against whom I lied Do I make fabrication against God ? By God ! I am the first to believe in Him Do I tell lies against the Prophet ? I am the first to testify to his prophethood By God ! I never told a lie against any one But it is true that what I speak is beyond your understanding I cast pearls and do not demand their price provided that they may understand them Undoubtedly they shall know the truth of what I say on the Day of Judgment

---

## HIS SERMON No 74

### *How to bless the Prophet ?*

O Spreader of the earth ! O Beholder of the high heavens ! O Creator of every creature according to his fate good or bad ! bestow Thy choicest blessings on Thy servant and Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be on him and his descendants) who is the last of all the Prophets who is the conqueror of hidden knowledge, who speaks and proclaims truth in the face of impending dangers who crushes the supporters of falsehood and powerful but misguided people O God ! send Thy choicest blessings to Thy Prophet for he shouldered the heavy responsibilities of prophethood remained firm and unshaken at Thy Command acted according to Thy will and graced his steps from Thy obedience He was never negligent in the discharge of his duties as a prophet He was the protector of Thy revelations He passed his life in the execution of Thy orders He revealed the flames of knowledge to the seekers of truth and showed the right path to the misguided people Those who were lost in sins and seditions received guidance from him He is Thy trustee and Thou hast appointed him Thy trustee (of Thy revelations) He knew Thy secrets He shall testify Thee on the Day of Judgment Thou hast created him truthful and appointed him prophet O God ! have mercy on his family Make him superior to Thy near ones Reward him handsomely Let him intercede for his followers for he is just and can distinguish between right and wrong O God ! bestow upon him peace and Thy choicest blessings

## HIS SERMON No. 75.

### On Marwan Ibnal Hakam.

(In the battle of Jamal, Marwan Ibnal Hakam was captured. He requested Hazrat Imam Hasan and Hazrat Imam Husain to recommend him to their father for his release. Accordingly he was set free. Then they informed their father that he wanted to take the oath of allegiance to him. Thereupon Hazrat Ali said :—)

Did he not swear his allegiance to me after the murder of (Hazrat) Usman ? I need not take the oath of allegiance from him. He has already paid his homage to a Jew. If he takes the oath of allegiance to me, he shall betray his master. He has an empire. He shall lick it just as a dog licks his nose. He is the father of four sheep and very soon he and his sons shall kill the Muslims.

---

## HIS SERMON No. 76.

### On the general oath of allegiance to Hazrat Usman.

You know it well that I am more deserving of Caliphate than he. By God ! I submit to the will of God provided there is peace and there is no open tyranny and persecution during his Caliphate though I may be persecuted for I shall be handsomely rewarded by God for the renunciation of a thing after which you so earnestly hanker.

---

## HIS SERMON No. 77.

### About the murder of Hazrat Usman.

Did the knowledge of my nature not prevent them from blaming me ? Did these ignorant persons despite their knowledge about my past life charge me with the murder of Hazrat Usman ? Did God not advise them against back-biting ? I am about to fight against the Kharijites and who have turned against truth. The Umayyads should prove this allegation by quoting verses from the Holy Quran. Undoubtedly, on the Day of Judgment, God shall punish persons for their evil intentions.

## HIS SERMON No. 78

When the information and intelligence reached Hazrat Ali that the Umayyads doubt Ali to be a party in the murder of Hazrat Usman, Hazrat Ali said.

Did not the information of my good virtues prevent them from this blame? These ignorant fellows did not consider my just and right former dealings with them. Did they not know how brave I am? How ruthlessly bravely and firmly I fought on the side of the Holy Prophet against the enemy of the Prophet? Under these circumstances how can I associate myself in the murder of anybody secretly, which is nothing but the sin of a coward. Did not God make them hear my exhortations from my own tongue? Did not God prevent backbiting? Did He not say, (1) 'For surely suspicion in some cases is a sin' Again did God not say (2) "And do not spy nor let some of you backbite others?" Are these not the words of God, (3) "And those who speak evil things of the believing men and the believing women without their having earned (it), they are guilty indeed of a false accusation and a manifest sin" I am ready to fight those who have gone outside the sphere of righteousness. I am the enemy of those who doubt. Whatever the Umayyads claim, let it be seen in the light of the Holy Book, (let them prove through the Holy Quran). Surely on the Day of Judgment people will be rewarded according to their motives (the Umayyads who were investigating the murder of (Hazrat) Usman, in fact, smell Caliphate and Government underneath)

---

## HIS SERMON No. 79.

On a good man.

May God have mercy on him who listened to truth and remembered it, who was invited to truth and accepted it. Some leader helped him and he got salvation. He acted according to the commands and prohibitions of God. He was

- 
- (1) The Holy Quran Part XXVI, Ch XLIX, verse 12
  - (2) The Holy Quran Ch XLIX, verse 12
  - (3) The Holy Quran Ch XXIII, verse 58

afraid of the punishments for his sins He did good deeds in right earnest He did good actions which would help him in the next world He abstained from prohibitions He hit his arrow at the mark He never yielded to his passions He considered worldly gains and ambitions to be false He made patience his camel to carry the load of his salvation and piety his way provisions He adopted the right and bright path He took full advantage of the time at his disposal He hurried to death and made good deeds his way provisions

---

## HIS SERMON No 80

### About the Umayyads

(During the Caliphate of Hazrat Usman Saeed Ibne As was the Governor of Kufa He sent a present to Hazrat Ali with a letter saying therein that besides Hazrat Usman he did not send a better present than this to any other person When Hazrat read this letter he remarked —)

The Umayyads give me bit by bit from the inheritance of the Holy Prophet just as a camel is milked bit by bit I will tear them to pieces just as the butcher makes a big piece of flesh into small pieces

---

## HIS SERMON No 81

### A Prayer

O God ! pardon my sins which Thou knowest better than me Check me if I feel inclined to commit sins O God ! forgive my ways which I made to my passions but which Thou didst not see fulfilled O God ! forgive that action of mine which brought me near Thee but later on my heart opposed it O God ! forgive me for the commissions of my eyes tongue and heart

---

## HIS SERMON No 82

### On Astronomy ✓

(When Hazrat Ali intended to go to crush the rebellion of the Kharijites a person told him that if he would undertake

the journey just then, according to astronomy, he would not be victorious. He thereupon remarked —)

Do you think that you can tell the time when a traveller is not harmed. Can you frighten a person travelling at a certain time? He who believes your statement falsifies the Holy Quran. He becomes indifferent to the help of God in attaining his aim and reaching his destination. It is clear from your statement that he who acts upon your orders need not praise God but you for you, because of your misguided energy, direct him to act at such a time when he shall invariably gain and never lose.

He then said to the audience —

O People! abstain from learning and teaching astronomy with the exceptions of a few rules which may help you in voyage and journey for the knowledge of astronomy invites you to magic. An astronomer is like a magician. A magician is an infidel. An infidel is destined to go into hell. You start your journey in the name of God.

---

### HIS SERMON No. 83.

#### *On the censure of women. ✓*

The faith of women is defective. Their fate is defective (i.e. their share is less than that of man). Their wisdom is defective. Their faith is defective because during their monthly course they have to give up their prayer and fasting. Their wisdom is defective because two female witnesses are equal to one male witness. Their fate is defective because their share in inheritance is half of a man. Save yourselves from the clutches of wicked women, but abstain from good women also. Never obey them even if they ask you to do good deeds, lest they get you entangled in some thing bad.

---

### HIS SERMON No. 84

#### *On piety.*

O People! to curtail your desires, to thank God for His blessings and to refrain from all evils is piety. (If you cannot

do thus), at least prohibition must not overcome your patience and you must not forget your Benefactor when you get a blessing. Verily, God has set at naught your excuses and reasonings by His clear and tangible reasonings and His Books

---

## HIS SERMON No 85

### About the World

How to praise this home which begins with pain and sorrow and ends with destruction? If a thing is legal a man has to render account (on the Day of Judgment) if a thing is illegal he shall be punished for it. He who becomes rich and indifferent here is a mischief monger, and he who is poor here is involved in difficulties and sorrows. He who tries to get it loses it, and he who is indifferent to it is attracted by it. If a man sees this world with a critical eye, it is an eye opener for him, but if a man is attracted by its beauties and decorations, it makes him blind

---

## HIS SERMON No 86

### Condition of a man before and after death

All praise is due to God Who is sublime due to His power, Who is near due to His mercy. He is the bestower of all gains. He is the remover of all hardships. I praise Him because of His constant favours and vast blessings. He is the first spring. I testify it. He is the Guide and He is very near. I seek guidance and help from Him for He is all powerful. I trust Him because He is self sufficient. He is the helper. I testify that MOHAMMAD (Peace of God be on him and his descendants) is His servant and His apostle. God made him His Prophet to execute His orders to send His message and to frighten the people.

O People! I advise you to fear God Who has set many examples before you, Who has fixed the time of your death. He has allowed you to go wherever you like. He has opened the means of your livelihood. He is in the know of your good and bad actions. He has made you wait for the rewards or

punishments for your good and bad actions. He has conferred upon you the best blessings. He has frightened you from evils. He has fixed your life in this world. You are examined in this world and on the Day of Judgment you shall have to render your accounts. Alas! this world is very dark. Its springs are very dirty. Its scenes are very pleasant. But its result is very bad. This world is treacherous. Its light shall be off very soon. It is subject to decay and destruction. The world ties the rope of death to the neck of a man and drags him to a dreadful place where he will see his actions and where he shall get the reward of his good deeds. This will be the fate of the posterity also. Death does not give up its work of destruction. It shall continue its work till the last day. Then God will take out all the dead persons from their graves, the birds from their nests, the wild beasts from their dens where they perished. They shall hurry to the orders of God. They shall go to meet their fate in groups. There shall be pin drop silence and they shall stand in lines. They will hear. They shall be present on demand. Their condition will be very miserable and wretched. No lame excuse shall help them there. All their desires shall come to an end. They shall be grieved. Their voice shall tremble. Their faces shall perspire. They will be awfully afraid. They shall be impatiently attentive to respond to their call. The bad ones shall be punished, while the good ones shall be rewarded. He has created these people for the Day of Judgment. He has trained them willingly or unwillingly. He has captured them through the hidden path of death. They were buried in graves. Their bones are rotten. Every one of them is given new life. They are rewarded for their good deeds. They were given chance to get out of ignorance and darkness. They were shown straight and bright path. They were given life to win the pleasure of God, and darkness of doubts and suspicions were removed. They were given full liberty to take advantage of their wisdom during their long life.

Would that they had listened to good pieces of advice and suggestions! O People! fear God like the person who listened and was afraid, committed sin but repeatedly did good deeds and abstained from evils, offered prayers, believed in death, took lessons from the conditions of others and abstained from prohibitions. Be pious like a person who followed the Holy



fire of hell and the flames of fire were burning brightly In the grave death does not come soon There a man has no power to avoid punishment

O People! You are given life and you are wasting it in pleasures and enjoyments You are given lead and guidance and you understand your good and bad very well You are given time but you are indifferent You are given safety, but you have forgotten your origin and the Day of Judgment You are given sufficient time You are given so many blessings You are warned of the consequences of evil actions and you are promised the reward of good actions Refrain from evils which lead you to destruction.

O People! Do not waste this time Now inevitable death has spared you The soul is free Your body is sound There is sufficient time for you You are independent There is still time for repentance Offer prayers and do good deeds before death overtakes you and you are buried in a dark grave.

---

## HIS SERMON No. 87.

### About Amr Ibnal As.

It is a great wonder that this son of a bad woman instigates the Syrians against me daily He tells them that I am fond of pleasures and I always indulge in enjoyments, fun and merry making He deliberately tells lies against me and he has uttered these words about me in sin Remember that it is very bad to tell a lie Amr Ibnal As is a liar of first water He makes a promise and breaks it When he is asked questions, he does not reply He does not keep his promise If he is present in a war, he gives so many orders and threatens the people before the swords are drawn out from their sheaths His greatest fraud is that he lies quite naked before the people By God! worldly pleasures and enjoyments prevent him from remembering death His indifference to the next world makes him tell lies He did not swear allegiance to Muawiyah unless he was promised some gift for selling his conscience

does not misguide him He gets the happy news of heaven  
He enjoys sweet sleep On the day of Judgment he shall  
be immune from all dangers He passed a virtuous life in  
this world Fear of God made him vigilant and active in his  
prayers He protected his next life in this world The Book  
of God is a sufficient guide for you

O People ! I advise you to fear that God Who has showed  
you the right path He has prohibited you from malice and  
enmity which mislead you He has placed you in great  
ordeals He has made evils tempting and attractive He  
tests his friends very strictly

He further says about the creation of the people —

This is the man whom the Creator of the world has  
created in the dark womb In the beginning he was only a  
drop of water, then a little flesh and then a baby in the womb  
of the mother He was born and began to suck up the milk  
of his mother He then became a foolish child and later  
on he was a grown up man God has bestowed upon him a  
heart to protect him a tongue to speak, and eyes to see and  
take warnings so that he may abstain from evils Now there  
was a sense of proportion in all his limbs His body was fully  
developed Now he became proud and disobedient He fell  
an easy victim to avarice He began to make efforts for  
worldly gains and was lost in pleasures He was thus mis-  
guided He was never afraid of any danger Thus he died  
in darkness and deception He passed his life for a short time  
in sins and got nothing He did not discharge his duties to God  
He was passing the rest of his life in arrogance and pleasures  
when all of a sudden death overtook him He passed sleepless  
day and night in great pain amidst wailing woman kind father  
and twin brother He had no alternative but to suffer all these  
intolerable and unbearable pains He had to submit to death  
He was then wrapped in shroud before his helpless family  
He was now quite submissive and obedient His friends and  
relatives then took him on their shoulders to the grave where  
they buried his corpse

The greatest trouble in the grave was that he was given  
the boiling water from the hell He was roasted by the

fire of hell and the flames of fire were burning brightly In the grave death does not come soon There a man has no power to avoid punishment

O People! You are given life and you are wasting it in pleasures and enjoyments You are given lead and guidance and you understand your good and bad very well You are given time but you are indifferent You are given safety, but you have forgotten your origin and the Day of Judgment You are given sufficient time You are given so many blessings You are warned of the consequences of evil actions and you are promised the reward of good actions Refrain from evils which lead you to destruction

O People! Do not waste this time Now inevitable death has spared you The soul is free Your body is sound There is sufficient time for you You are independent There is still time for repentance Offer prayers and do good deeds before death overtakes you and you are buried in a dark grave.

---

### HIS SERMON No. 87.

#### About Amr Ibnal As.

It is a great wonder that this son of a bad woman instigates the Syrians against me daily He tells them that I am fond of pleasures and I always indulge in enjoyments, fun and merry making He deliberately tells lies against me and he has uttered these words about me in sin Remember that it is very bad to tell a lie Amr Ibnal As is a liar of first water He makes a promise and breaks it When he is asked questions, he does not reply He does not keep his promise If he is present in a war, he gives so many orders and threatens the people before the swords are drawn out from their sheaths His greatest fraud is that he lies quite naked before the people By God! worldly pleasures and enjoyments prevent him from remembering death His indifference to the next world makes him tell lies He did not swear allegiance to Muawiyah unless he was promised some gift for selling his conscience

## HIS SERMON No. 88.

### An advice to his companions

I testify that there is no god but God and He has no co sharer He has been in existence since eternity and nothing existed before Him He has no end Even the flight of imagination cannot reach the secrets of His attributes No diagnosis can be made of Him He has no form and shape. Neither the eyes nor the heart can surround Him

In the same sermon He says —

O People ! Take lessons from these sermons which may help you on the Day of Judgment Take warnings from clear and tangible manifestations Consider those threats which prevent a man from grossest sins Abstain from evils Take warnings from the conditions of the past people as if you are under the clutches of a dreadful lion and you are quite despondent of your life You are driven to your destination There are one witness and one driver with every breath The driver takes him to the Day of Resurrection and the witness is ready to give evidence to his actions

In this very sermon he praises Paradise thus —

There are classes in the heaven They are graded There are stages in heaven The heavenly blessings shall never be stopped Its residents shall not become old They shall never be in want of anything

---

## HIS SERMON No 89

### Provision for the next world

God is in the know of all secrets He knows all the thoughts of the heart He surrounds everything He overpowers all So it is reasonable for you to do good deeds for the next world before you die Gather provisions for the next world which is your permanent home while you are living in this transitory world O People ! fear God about those things which God in His Book has ordered you to protect Consider those rights over which God has appointed

you trustees Let it be clearly known to you that God has not in vain created you, nor has He left you at random You are not left in darkness and ignorance He has told you the aim of your life He has fixed the period of your lives He knows of your actions He has revealed the Book to you which describes everything He allowed the Holy Prophet to live amongst you for a certain period, so much so that He made Islam a perfect religion for you and your prophet This is the religion which God is pleased with He proclaimed it through the Holy Prophet for your benefit He likes and dislikes His commands and prohibitions He has promised to you the blessings of Heaven and frightened you of the punishment of Hell Now do not waste the rest of your life, for this period is much less than the period in which you were in darkness and as such you were indifferent to all sermons and good pieces of advice Do not let loose your passions for it will take you to the religion of the cruel people Do not be indolent and lethargic in piety lest death should overtake you Those persons who control their passions are the most obedient of all to God And those who deceive their passions are the most disobedient people of God He whose faith is good is happy He who takes instructions from others is fortunate He whose pride and passions deceive him is very unfortunate Let it be known to you that a little hypocrisy is bad If a man sits among greedy people, he shall sell his conscience and invite Satan to him Abstain from telling lies for it will keep you away from faith He who speaks truth shall get salvation and he who tells lies shall fall into the well of disgrace and humiliation Do not be envious of others, for envy eats up faith as fire eats up wool Do not bear malice for others for it is a sharp sword Let it be clearly known to you that inordinate ambitions make you forget the next world Falsify such ambitions for they make men proud

---

## HIS SERMON No. 90

### On love of God.

O People ! He is the most beloved of God who has control over his passions He fears God He keeps the lamp of guidance burning in his heart He is making preparation

for his coming guest (death) He is very much familiar with death He bears the difficulties and troubles of this world very patiently He meditates upon God and remembers Him He has quenched his thirst with the sweet water of God's cognizance He walks on the straight path with peace of mind and satisfaction of heart He keeps his passion under his strict control He has no doubts and suspicions He has only one desire in his heart (He wants to be near God for good) He is away from the darkness of ignorance He is not one of the avaricious persons He began to lead the people He closed the doors of darkness He adopted the straight path and set out on it He overcame the difficulties on the way He caught hold of the strong ropes He sees the light of faith like the bright sun He devoted his life to the selfless services of God Such a person is a lamp in darkness He removes all the screens of doubts He opens all the knots He guides those who are lost in wilderness and have gone astray He says only what he has been taught He is quiet when he is made to submit to the will of God He has devoted his life only to God and God has also selected him for His service He is the foundation of faith and he is a peg on the earth of God He is just and he has removed all worldly thoughts from his heart He praises God and acts upon it He never gives up anything in which there is some good He rides upon the Book of God and strongly and firmly holds its rein He is the

and perplexed in wilderness ? It is very surprising that you are misguided and misled although the descendants of your prophet are amongst you. They are the tongues of truth. Love them. Turn to them as thirsty camels turn to water. O People ! listen to the sayings of the Holy Prophet. He says. He who dies of us does not really die. But due to physical death he becomes old and useless. O People ! Do not talk about a thing which you do not know. For some times there is truth in it which you deny. Excuse the man to whom you did not listen. Did I not act upon the teachings of the Holy Quran before you ? Did not I leave amongst you the progeny of the Holy Prophet ? I explained to you what is legal and illegal. By my justice I gave you peace. I did you much favour. I set the best example before you to copy. Do not try to investigate into a matter which even men with penetrating eyes cannot see. Do not ponder over it.

In the same sermon he says —

People think that the world is attached to the Umayyads just as a camel is tied with a rope. It gives them milk to drink. It takes them to its clear and transparent streams. Their swords and whips cannot be separated from these people. Those who are under this impression are liars. As a matter of fact the pleasures of this life are like a draught which a man enjoys for a while and then throws it away.

---

## HIS SERMON No 91

### Censure of his companions

Let it be known to you that God has not broken down the power of the tyrants but He has given them time and worldly pleasures. He has joined the broken bones of the past nations. Now you have turned to great punishment. You do not listen to good pieces of advice and sermons. I wonder much at it. Remember that every person is not wise, every ear does not hear and every eye does not see. I am very much surprised that this party is sadly mistaken and guilty and none can change my opinion about it. They are in the know of it. They neither follow the teachings and traditions of the Holy Prophet nor do they follow his vicege-

rent They have neither faith in the Day of Judgment nor do they abstain from sins They follow falsehood and act according to the dictates of their passions If a thing is according to their taste, it is good although it may be illegal If they do not like a thing according to them, it is bad (although it may be legal) In difficult commands, they turn to their passions, and in matters pertaining to the cognizance of God, they act according to their own false notions Every person is a leader for his passions If there is any problem, he decides it in the light of his own reasonings (unmindful of the teachings of the Holy Quran and the Holy Prophet)

---

## HIS SERMON No. 92.

On Jihad.



which your ancestors were ignorant , and you are not gifted with any such thing of which they were deprived Really troubles are coming over you Their reins are not strong So wealth in which proud and ignorant persons are rolling may not tempt and deceive you It is a shadow which is drawn on the surface of the earth for a certain period

---

## HIS SERMON No. 93

### On God

God is recognised without being seen He creates without hesitation and consideration He has been existing since eternity when there were no skies, there were no dark nights there were no oceans, there were no mountains there were no paths and no earth, and there were no powerful creations God is the fountain of creations, but He is above understanding He is the worshipped and adored of the creations He is the provider of the means of subsistence The Sun and the Moon rotate according to His will He makes every new thing old He has fixed the means of subsistence for His creations He has counted their actions He has enumerated their breaths He has read their eyes He knows their hearts He is in the know of the time of their births He will give very severe punishments to His enemies on the Day of Judgment although He confers upon them so many blessings in this world He will show His favours to His friends on the Day of Judgment, though they suffer much in this world If a person stands against Him, He crushes him If a man opposes Him, He destroys him He disgraces the person who is arrogant and disobedient He overcomes the man who is bent upon His enmity He helps the man who trusts Him and depends upon Him If a person begs of Him, He gives him according to his capacity He who gives Him charity gets its handsome reward He who praises Him is rewarded O People! weigh your souls before you are weighed Take account of your souls before you are asked to submit their accounts You repent for your omissions and commissions before you die You pass your lives in submission and obedience before you are sent to the next world, with severity Remember he who

does not control his passions with the help of Providence and his own sound judgment can never control them He yields to his passions Good pieces of advice sound suggestions and threats of other persons will not bring him round

---

## HIS SERMON No 94

### Ashbah

All praise is due to God Whose wealth does not multiply if He is not generous nor does His wealth decrease by His generosity The wealth of every person decreases by his generosity , and any person who stops his hand from generosity is bad He favours all because of His unlimited wealth The creations are His children and He is responsible for the means of their subsistence He has fixed their livelihood He has shown many ways for the seekers of subsistence He has also opened the ways to the next world for its seekers He is so kind and merciful that He bestows upon people even those things which they do not demand He has no beginning and no end There was nothing before Him and there shall be nothing after Him Time is subject to Him , He is not subject to the changes of Times He did not live nor does He live in any particular house which may necessitate His shifting to another house Due to His generosity, jewels came out from the mines of mountains , due to His generosity, different kinds of precious stones are brought out from the seas to the public views If He gives away all of them in charity His generosity shall not be affected Verily, He has mines of gifts and blessings which can not be exhausted by the inordinate ambitions of men He is so generous that not a drop becomes less from His ocean of generosity by giving it away to beggars nor can He become miserly by the constant and great demands of the people

Behold ! O Petitioner ! The Holy Quran has guided you to the attributes of God Follow the Holy Quran and take guidance from it The Satan has misguided you to attain the knowledge of a certain thing whose acquiring is not made compulsory for you in the Quran nor does there exist any thing about it in the teachings of the Holy Prophet Now

leave the knowledge of that thing to God. You have to follow only the Holy Quran and the traditions of the Holy Prophet. Let it be known to you clearly that deeply learned persons are those whose strong faith is One God and His Apostle has made them indifferent to the finding out of hidden secrets of God. They believe summarily in those matters which are not clearly explained. These are the persons who admit the limitations of their understanding and knowledge if they fail to make out anything and so God has praised such persons. They need not try to find out the secrets of God and they act upon this. Hence they are called deeply learned persons.

O foolish petitioner! Cut it short. Do not consider the excellences, grandeur and greatness of God according to your own ability and capacity, otherwise you shall perish.

Listen to me! God is so powerful and Almighty that if imagination throws the arrows of reflection towards Him, if the power of reflection tries to penetrate the depth of His hidden secrets, if importunate and restless hearts try to find out the significance of the attributes of God, they shall be disappointed in their attempts.

O God! Those who compare Thee with Thy creatures are liars. These misguided people consider their idols to be as good as Thou art and they attribute all the qualities of the created ones to Thee. I testify that he who considers Thee to be like the created ones and thinks that others are Thy co-workers is certainly an infidel. God is above human understanding. He is even above conception and imagination.

He has fixed a certain period of life for His creations. He has turned them to their Destination. These creations cannot go beyond their limits and they have no alternative but to submit to Him. He has ordered them to follow a certain path but He has not made that path difficult. He has created different kinds of creatures without contemplation and meditation. He does not stand in need of picking up experiences from the changes and vicissitudes of times nor does He require the help of any co-worker. He has created different creatures and things at His will. They submitted

to Him and responded to His call. He did not not feel tired of these creations. He set them straight. He fully explained the objects of His creations. He has reconciled the contrary things because of His power. He has divided them into different classes according to their characteristics features shapes etc. They are the wonders of His creations. He has created them at His will and made them strong.

In the same sermon He says about the sky —

God has combined the big and vast patches of the sky into one without any connection. He has made it very easy for the angels who come down to the earth and go up to the sky in connection with the execution of His orders. The sky was nothing but smoke but He patched up the big holes of its vast expanse with His one voice. He then opened up big doors in it. He then studded it with bright stars for the protection of the doors. He ordered them to remain stationary. He created the Sun and the Moon to give light in day and night respectively. He made them moving in their respective courses so that the day and night might be determined and the year might be calculated. He decorated the sky with the sun, the moon and the bright stars.

He says in praise of the angels —

God created the wonderful angels to live on the sky. He filled the vast sky and their big clefts with them. Their sweet voices are heard through the big holes and doors in the sky. Their voices deafen the ears. God has made angels of different shapes and sizes. They are gifted with wings to fly. They are always busy in praising God. These wonderful angels do not in any way attribute the creations of God to them nor do they even think that they are the co sharers of God in the creation of various things. They are His respectable servants. They execute the orders of God with hearts and souls. God made them the trust of His revelations and entrusted them with the work of transmitting His commands and prohibitions to the Prophets. They are above doubts and suspicions. They never abstain from the execution of any will of God. God has made them meek mild humble and submissive. He has made it easy for them to praise Him. They are incapable of committing

great sins The changes of day and night have no effect over them They have very strong and firm faith in God and as such they can never become sceptic They cannot be envious and jealous The greatness of God and the fear of His kingdom are deeply rooted in their hearts The Satan cannot misguide them They are free from the temptations of Satan Some of them are appointed to create thick clouds, big mountains, and dark dust There are some angels whose feet have made wider gulfs at the bottom of the earth These angels are like white flags and are mixed with air at the openings Below them, there is good and still air These flags are the protectors of the air They are exempted from multifarious activities due to the fact that they are over-busy in their prayers to God Their firm and strong faith in God has brought them very near to God Their cognizance of God has separated them from other relations Their love for God, their interest in Him and the happiness and pleasures which they derive from Him do not allow them to deviate from Him They have enjoyed the sweet taste of the cognizance of God and have drunk the overflowing cup of His wine His fear is deeply rooted in their hearts They always pray to God because of their keen and deep interest in Him They have not become arrogant and proud because of their constant prayers The prayers which they have been offering to God for a long time have not made them indolent and lethargic nor do they even revolt against God Their lips have not become parched due to constant prayers They have no other engagements which may lead them astray They do not bend down their necks in disobedience to God's order for pleasures They can never be negligent in the discharge of their duties They can never yield to temptations They have made the prayers to God their provisions for the Day of Judgment They do not offer their prayers to God for any greed Their implicit and unflinching faith in God and His fear make them always pray to God They have not ceased to fear God which may make them negligent nor have they become victims to any kind of avarice which may deviate them from the true path If they had considered any temptations worth while, they might have diminished or eliminated their fear of God The Satan cannot make them disobey God Evil cannot confound them Envy cannot overcome them Scepticism cannot change them These pious angels

of God which resulted in his expulsion from heaven to earth after repentance. He did this so that his descendants might inhabit earth and Adam might prove the existence of God. After his (Adam's) death, He did not stop this. He sent His Prophets to the earth from time to time to give the messages of God to the people and thus establish some relations between men and God. The Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be on him and his descendants) was the last of all the Prophets and He perfected this world. He distributed livelihood to all. He gave some persons more and some persons less. This unequal distribution of God is based on justice. He has done it deliberately to test the people. Those persons who were contented and satisfied with their poverty and did not grumble at it were made rich, happy and prosperous. He bestowed upon some persons long life and some persons short life but death is inevitable for all. God knows the secrets of all. He knows the whispers of the people. He knows the intentions of the people. There is absolutely nothing of which God is ignorant. He knows where the smallest creatures live. He knows the winter lodging places of the underground creatures. He listens to the cries of speechless animals. He hears the footsteps of the persons who walk very calmly and quietly. He knows the dens of the wild beasts in the caves. He knows when and where the leaves of trees fall. He knows the gathering of clouds and falling of rains. He knows the things which are destroyed by floods and rains. He knows the tops of mountains where birds live. He recognizes the voice of good singing birds in the dark nests. He knows the pearls in the shell which are in the ocean. Nothing is hidden from Him, whether it is in dark night or broad day light. He understands and knows every voice, every word and every movement of human beings and the weight and density of every thing. He has not to make any effort to know and understand all these things. He has not to undergo any hardship to protect His creatures.

O God! Thou art worth remembering. Thy blessings are worth enumerating. To love Thee is the best thing. To expect something from Thee is the best expectation. O God! I cannot praise any one but Thee. I cannot use my tongue in praise of others. O God! one who praises Thee is handsomely rewarded. I pray to Thee to give me salvation, and forgive

and forget my omissions and commissions O God ! I need Thy help I am quite helpless None but Thee can satisfy my needs O God ! make me contented and satisfied, so that I may not spread my hand before any one Verily Thou art Almighty and All powerful

---

### HIS SERMON No 95

(After the murder of Hazrat Usman when people wanted to take the oath of allegiance to Hazrat Ali he said —)

Leave me Request any other person to shoulder the responsibility for we are turning to a problem which has different solutions The problem is not yet decided It is very knotty and disputed The clouds of ignorance have spread over the earth and the ways and paths are not visible Let it be clearly known to you that if I accept your request and take the oath of allegiance from you, I will make you observe commands and prohibitions of God which I understand very well I will not then care a bit for you If you spare me from it, I shall be one with you I hope I shall obey the Caliph selected by you more than you I prefer to become your minister rather than your Caliph

---

### HIS SERMON No 96.

#### On the Kharijites

O People ! Let it be known to you that I have scratched out the eyes of seditions and none but myself can do it Now you may ask me anything you like lest I should die By God! You shall not ask any question about that which lies between you and the Day of Judgment, nor will you ask me anything regarding the group of which 100 persons shall receive guidance and 100 shall go astray But I shall tell you something about their announcers the drivers of camels and sleeping places of their riders and the places where they keep their loads and luggages I shall also inform you of their persons who will be killed and who will die natural deaths If you *do not find me and misfortunes befall you most of the questioners shall bow down their heads* (shall be perplexed and

confounded), and most of you shall not be able to answer questions out of fear. It shall happen in the most critical days of your wars. You shall not dare to fight. The world shall become a miserable place for you. The days of your misfortune shall be long till God will make the best of the remnants of you victorious. When seditions spread in any nation, they spread in the garb of virtues, and when they disappear they warn the people of seditions. When seditions overtake people, only then they realise their evils. They spread like wild fire. Beware! I consider the Umayyads to be the worst sedition for you. Verily, they are very bad. He who will make use of his brain shall be safe from their mischiefs. By God! after me you shall find Umayyads very bad rulers. They shall constantly trouble and harass you. They shall leave any one of you who does not benefit them or who is harmless for them. They shall not allow you to live in peace unless you become their most obedient and submissive slaves. We, the progeny of the Holy Prophet, shall be free from their seditions, but we shall not be able to invite people to God and Truth in those seditious days. Then God shall put these seditions to an end. He who drives the people to disgrace and misfortune shall have to drink the bitter cup of death. He shall get nothing but sword. He shall put on the dress of fear and disgrace. In those days, the Quraish shall prefer to see me even for the twinkling of an eye to all the riches of this world. They shall then value me and shall be willing to offer me all, though they are refusing me a little of it now.

---

## HIS SERMON No. 97.

### On the Prophets

All praise is due to God Who cannot be reached even by the flight of imagination. No person, however, wise he may be, can understand Him. He has no beginning and no end.

In the same sermon he says —

God made the Prophets Faithful ones. They were born of noble and good families. God created the Prophets for the establishment of His religion. Muhammad (may peace and blessings of God be on him and his descendants) was the



last of all the Prophets All the Prophets were born of good families They were brought up in healthy environments The sons of the Holy Prophet are the best sons and his Ahlul Bait are the best Ahlul Bait His tree is the best of all trees He is brought up by God He is grown up under the mercy and protection of God His branches are long and high They are bearing many fruits which are not as yet ripe He is the leader of the pious persons He is the light of the eyes of the guided people He is kindling a lamp whose light shall spread far and wide and which shall never be extinguished His policy is middle one His path is the path of guidance His words distinguish between right and wrong and his commandments are based on reason and justice May God bless you! Follow your Imams The path of Shariat is cut and dry It invites you to Darul Islam Live in that house and submit to the will of God Let it be known to you clearly that now you have plenty of time at your disposal, the book of your actions is still open and your actions are taken down in it, you are keeping good health, you have your tongues under your control, repentance is heard and actions are accepted

---

### HIS SERMON No 98

#### On the Holy Prophet.

God created Muhammad (Peace of God be on him and his descendants) at a time when people were lost in ignorance, confusion and seditions Inordinate ambitions and desires were leading the people to destruction People had become proud and arrogant They were the victims of follies They were confounded and perplexed by doubts and superstitions The truthful Prophet of God tried his level best to instruct and guide them He became the guide of the path of God and invited the people to be truthful and to do good deeds

---

### HIS SERMON No 99.

#### On the Holy Prophet.

All praise is due to God Who has no beginning and no end He overcomes all, none overcomes Him Though He

is hidden, yet He is the nearest to everyone. In the same sermon he says about the Holy Prophet Muhammad :—

He is the best of all the creations of God. He is descended from the best family. The hearts of the virtuous and good persons are turned to him. The persons who have eyes to see look to him for guidance. Jealousy is buried deep due to him. He has put an end to enmity, malice and seditions. He has established brotherhood. He has dispersed the parties of infidels and unbelievers. Disgrace and humiliation have disappeared. Worldly titles, pelf and power have been disgraced. His word is the word of God.

---

## HIS SERMON No. 100.

### On disobedience.

Although God has given time to a tyrant yet He has not let him go out of His control. He lies in wait for him. He stands on his ways and is ready to catch hold of him. By God! This nation (the Umayyads) shall overcome you not because of their cause being just and right, but because they follow their false leader in right earnest promptly, whereas you follow me after much hesitation. I asked you to go for Jihad but you did not. I told you the truth but you did not listen to it. I called you directly and indirectly but you did not respond to my call. I gave you advice but you did not care for it. You are present before me like absentees. Although you are servants, you consider yourselves to be masters. I give you instructions but you turn your faces against them. I induce you to fight against the rebels and misguided people, but I find you divided and scattered like the progeny of Saba. You turn to your assemblies and deceive one another. I bring you round in the morning but I find you crooked again the same evening. O audience! your Amir calls you to obey the orders of God but you are disobedient and sinful. The Amir of Syrians (Muawiyah) disobeyed God, but the Syrians follow him. By God! if Muawiyah exchanges his silver dirhams for gold coins and one Syrian for ten of you, I will gladly accept this offer. O Kufaites I am involved in difficulties due to your nature. Although you have ears, yet you are deaf to hear truth. You have

tongues but you cannot speak out the truth You have eyes, but you are blind When you meet your friends, you cannot speak out truth boldly and fearlessly You are untrustworthy and unreliable in days of adversity May God curse you! You are like the camels whose drivers are away When these camels gather together on one side they scatter on the other By God! I see you with my mental eye If actual war breaks out you leave Ibne Abi Talib alone By God! I am on the right path According to the teachings of Prophet I am on the straight path Verily I am on a bright path and pass it firmly I look at the progeny of your Holy Prophet Turn to them and follow their lead for they shall never mislead and misguide you Stay where they stay Stand where they stand Do not go ahead of them, otherwise you shall go astray, do not lag much behind, otherwise you shall perish I have seen the companions of the Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be on him and descendants) None of you looks like them They passed their whole nights in prayers They were too much afraid of the Day of Judgment There were deep marks on their foreheads owing to their long bowing (of their foreheads) on the ground When any mention of God was made they wept so much that their clothes got wet They trembled like a tree in a great storm due to the fear of punishment and they had also hope of reward on the Day of Judgment

---

### HIS SERMON No. 101.

#### On future seditions

By God! the Umayyads shall remain rulers till they make illegal things legal and remove the responsibilities of religion from the shoulders of the people They shall rule till they persecute even the dwellers of mud houses and tents and people come out of their houses because of their ill treatment People shall weep Some will weep for their religion and others will weep for this world Every one of you shall become their slave You shall obey them in their presence and curse them in their absence Even your superiors and those who are better religious persons than you are will be entangled in

seditions If God gives you peace, welcome it But if God puts you into trials and ordeals, have patience, for verily the rewards of the next world are for the virtuous and pious

---

## HIS SERMON No. 102.

### On Piety.

I praise God for what has happened and seek His help for good actions in future Just as I pray to God for good health, I also pray to Him for the safety of my religion O People! God tells you to renounce this world, although you are not ready to do it It weakens you physically but you love it You are like travellers in this world A traveller has to go to a certain destined place and he reaches there In the same way, you have also to go to a certain destination in a fixed time Death shall not spare you even for one day more than the fixed period In these circumstances, do not be lost in the pleasures of this world Do not be proud and arrogant Do not weep and cry when you are involved in the difficulties of this world The worldly powers and pelf shall perish soon Its blessings are subject to decay and destruction The worldly difficulties, troubles and hardships shall come to an end soon Time shall pass and every living creature shall taste death Do you not take lessons and warnings from your predecessors? Do you not see that your forefathers will not come back? Do you not see your posterity that it shall not live here for ever? Alas! consider over the vicissitudes of the time The day dawns The evening comes Some one dies His relatives weep People console them Some patient weeps and cries People come to see him Some one is about to die Despite these things, men hanker after this world and death follows them They are oblivious of death but death does not forget them Be warned! When you are in a hurry to do evils, remember God Who destroys pleasures and puts an end to inordinate ambitions Seek the help of God in the discharge of your duties and obligations to Him Seek His help to show your gratitude to Him for the innumerable blessings which He has conferred upon you

## HIS SERMON No 103

### An Advice to his Companions

All praise is due to god Who has scattered and showered His blessings upon this World I praise Him at all times whether I am well or ill I seek His help for the protection of His rights I testify that there is no God but god and Muhammad (Peace of God be on him and his descendants) is His servant and His apostle He has sent him to propagate His orders He discharged his duties with great integrity and honesty He died in harness while guiding the people He has left behind him the sign of Truth for our guidance He who trespassed this sign became renegade and he who disobeyed it perished He who obeyed it remained on the true path When you bowed your heads and pointed towards him with your finger as a mark of allegiance to him very soon he died Now remain in this world till God wills God may give you a person who may unite and lead you Never hope to get anything from a person who is not good Never be disappointed from a person whom you may not see for it is just possible that one of his legs may not be in its proper place whereas the other leg may be fixed at its place It is possible that both of his legs may be in their proper places Remember that the progeny of the Prophet Muhammad (May peace and blessings of Allah be on him) are like shining stars One star may set but the other rises God has perfected His blessings amongst you I showed you the thing whch you desire

---

## HIS SERMON No 104

### A Warning

God is Great and Almighty He has no beginning and no end Nothing existed before Him and nothing shall exist after Him I testify that there is no god but God

O People ! Your enm ty and opposition against me may not involve you in crimes and sins Your opposition against me may not lead you to destruction When I speak to you anything you do not try to belittle it I take the oath of

God, Who has created human beings that His Messenger (Holy Prophet Muhammad) was not a liar nor is his listener (Amirul Momineen) ignorant (Whatever I say is truth) I am looking at the misguided person who is speaking in Syria like a beast He has hoisted his flag in the vicinity of Kufa I see that he shall open his mouth like a wild beast in the very near future His opposition will be very strong His seditions shall harm the people of this age very much War shall break out His tyranny and oppression shall spread far and wide very soon I see that his fields shall yield rich harvest and his gardens shall give him plenty of fruits He shall cry like an infuriated and intoxicated camel His swords shall shine like lightening He shall be able to overcome his difficulties His seditions shall spread like the dark night and the surging waves Kufa shall be exposed to a very strong and furious storm Very soon both the parties shall come to grips People shall be cut into pieces with swords and they shall be buried under ground

---

## HIS SERMON No 105

### On future Seditions

On the Day of Judgment God shall gather all the people for rewarding and punishing them They shall stand with great humility and submission Perspiration shall flow over their foreheads to their mouths Earth shall make them tremble He who keeps his feet fixed at any place on that day shall be blessed and fortunate

In the same sermon he says —

In future seditions shall spread like the dark night No person shall be able to face them No army shall succeed in checking them They will come to you in haste like a loaded camel whose driver makes her run fast These seditious people shall be very greedy Another party which shall be weak and disgraced in this world and shall be looked down upon by these proud and arrogant people shall fight against them for God This weak and disgraced party shall be prominent in heaven O Basra! May God destroy you! When

the punishment of God shall come upon you neither the dust on the feet of the enemy's horses shall be seen nor shall the tinkling and rattling of his swords be heard O Basra ! Very soon your inhabitants shall face red death They shall be lilled with swords and famine shall overcome them

---

## HIS SERMON No 106

### An Advice

Look at this world like those persons who renounce it , for by God ' this world disposes off its inhabitants very soon This world gives much pain to those persons who are rich and wealthy Those who leave it shall never return here It is not known what misfortunes shall befall a person so that he may wait for them and he may try to avoid them There is no un mixed blessing in this world The prosperity of this world is accompanied by sorrows Men are becoming weak In these circumstances the worldly pleasures and allurements of which you have but a little share may not tempt and deceive you May God bless that man who takes warnings in worldly affairs These warnings have enlightened him and they make him think that whatever is found in this world shall perish very soon Its existence is subject to destruction Whatever exists in the next world shall remain for good Those things which are there are free from the destructive effects of time Whatever is limited and counted (this worldly life) shall come to an end Whatever is expected (next life) shall come very soon

In the same sermon he says —

He who knows himself is learned and he who does not know himself is ignorant Verily to God that person who is left to his own fate is the worst He leaves the middle path and goes out of the way He travels without any leader If he is invited to worldly gains and pleasures he gladly goes towards them If he is invited to do good for the next world he is indolent and lazy He understands that it is incumbent upon him to try for worldly gains and he need not do any thing for the next world

In the same sermon he says —

In these days of troubles and seditions only that Muslim who is entirely unknown can get salvation. If he goes to any meeting people may not recognize him and if he is absent people may not inquire about him and search for him. Such a Muslim is like a lamp in the dark night. He does not move amongst the people to spread seditions. He does not wash white linen in public. God will open the door of His mercy for such a man and He will close the door of punishment for him.

O People! the time is at hand when Islam shall be filled with seditions just as a cup is filled with its contents. O People! God has given you protection from oppressions but you are not made free from trials and ordeals. God says 'Most surely there are signs in this and most surely We are ever trying (men)'. Holy Quran Part XVIII Ch xxiii 30

---

## HIS SERMON No 107

### On the Holy Prophet

After the praise of God and blessings on the Holy Prophet Muhammad, it should be known to you that God created Muhammad (Peace of God be on him and his descendants) when there was none in Arabia who read the Holy Quran nor was there any person who claimed to be a Prophet. Thus Prophet of Arabia had to fight against his contemporaries though he wanted to lead them to salvation. He described before them the frightful scenes of the day of Judgment. The tired person became quite helpless and he who was bent down due to the burden of ignorance stood up. The Holy Prophet explained to him the teachings of Islam till he embraced it, but his arguments had no effect upon them who were destined to perish. He continued his work till he showed them the way to salvation. He placed them in their respective positions. They began to enjoy pleasures and their spears became straight. By God! I was busy in driving them till they showed their backs and retreated. They gathered



together in the cradle of submission I never showed any slackness or hesitation in fighting against them nor did I ever become indolent and idle in this matter By God ! I will break every false mirror till truth prevails

---

## HIS SERMON No 108

### An Advice

God created the Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be on him and his descendants) He testified to the propagation of all the past Prophets He gave the message of rewards and punishments In his boyhood he was the best person In his old age he was the best of all the creation He was descended from the best family He excelled all in generosity O People ! You did not enjoy worldly pleasures and you did not grow strong by drinking its milk (during the life time of the Holy Prophet), but now (after his death) you enjoy the pleasures of this world when there is none to check you To these groups, illegal and unlawful things are like plums which can be easily picked up as they have no thorns and legal and lawful things are disappearing from amongst them By God ! you have eaten the fruits of this world when its shadow was limited but now there is no check upon you Your strong hands are stretched and the hands of your true leaders are fastened Your swords are upon them and their swords are removed from you Beware ! there is blood for blood , and those who have any claims or rights shall demand them Verily ! God shall take revenge upon our murderers God is Almighty and All Powerful None can escape His punishment O Umayyads ! By God ! Very soon you shall find this caliphate in the hands of your enemies Beware ! the eyes which see the truth are the best and the ears which listen to the advice of good persons are the best O People ! enlighten your hearts with the advice of good preachers and fill your buckets with the water from clear and transparent stream O People ! do not be ignorant Do not be victims to your low desires , for he who stays at this place in these circumstances shall go into hell very soon and he shall shift his burden from one person to another It is sheer folly to mix and unite those things which cannot be combined

and united    Fear God    Do not lodge your complaints with a person who cannot remove them    He cannot untie those knots which have become very strong for you    Let it be clearly known to you that an Imam has no other responsibilities but those which God has imposed upon him    He should try his level best to advise and guide the people    He himself must act upon the teachings of the Holy Quran and the Holy Prophet    He must give the shares of the claimants to an inheritance    Make haste in acquiring knowledge before the autumn comes over the garden of learning and before you turn your faces from acquiring knowledge because of over-indulgence in worldly pleasures and carnal desires    You will also turn your faces from the learned people and prevent others from acquiring knowledge    God has given you definite orders that after your repentance from prohibitions, you should try your level best to prevent others from them

---

### **HIS SERMON No. 109.**

#### **On Islam, the Holy Prophet and his Companions**

All praise is due to God who revealed and explained Islam and its fountains were made accessible to all the comers and goers    He who wanted to overcome Islam was overcome by Islam    God made Islam a protection and refuge for those who embraced it    Islam is a great shield    Those who were its enemies and who find fault with it cannot refute its convincing and sound arguments    It is a light for those who seek guidance in it    There is much wisdom in it for those who understand it    It is a guide for the seekers of truth    It is full of instructions and warnings    There is salvation for those who testify it    It gives strength to those who believe in God.    Those who resign to the will of God get perpetual and perennial happiness and comfort    It is a shield for those who have patience    These are the blessings which God has conferred upon it    The teachings of Islam are quite evident and clear    The signs of its truth crushes its critics, its lamp is shining brightly    Its aim is very high, lofty and sublime    Those who embraced it first are respected, and respectable.

Its riders are noble and gentle. To testify it is its path. Correct arguments are at its signs. Its aim is to die before your death. The world is the field for its penance. The Day of Judgment is its race-course and Paradise is its lodging.

*In the same sermon he speaks about the Holy Prophet :—*

The Holy Prophet Muhammad kindled the love of God in the hearts of the people. He showed the shining and bright path to those who were lost in ignorance and darkness. O God ! He is Thy faithful one. He is above dishonesty and misappropriation. He shall testify to the good deeds of Thy creatures on the Day of Judgment. Thou created him because of Thy mercy over the people. Thou sent him as a true Prophet amongst the people. O God ! reward him highly for his good deeds. O God ! make his perfections sublime and high. Bestow upon him Thy blessings. Elevate his position. Let him surpass all Thy creations. Decide my case on the Day of Judgment in his connection. Do not disgrace me on that Day. Do not let me feel ashamed at my actions on the Day of Judgment. I must not go astray from the straight path. I must not break the promise made to him. I must not be misguided, nor must I be put in trials and ordeals.

*In the same sermon he says to his companions :—*

By the grace of God, you were so much elevated that your servants were also benefited from your favours and you showed your favours to your neighbours. You were surpassing those whom you did not excel nor did you show any favours to them. Even those people who were not your subjects were afraid of you. But it is a pity that you now see persons breaking the oath of allegiance and you do not get angry. If any of your predecessors broke his promise, you considered it a disgrace. The orders of God were revealed to you through the Holy Prophet and you transmitted them to your followers. You are now replaced by tyrants. You have given up your work. You have entrusted the work of God to those who are in scepticisms and doubts and who are victims of their low desires. By God ! the fear of those tyrants shall disunite and divide you under every star and they shall oppress you.

## HIS SERMON No 110

(It was delivered in the Battle of Siffin)

I saw you retreating and running away from the battle field You could not fight against the wild and disgraced people of Syria although you are the best and most respectable of the Arabs You are the nose of the Arabs and you are a great mountain The only thing which can give consolation and comfort to my heart is the successful termination of this war You break the ranks and files of the enemy just as they have broken ours You make them retreat just as they have forced you to retreat You destroy them with your swords and arrows Your spears may pierce in their hearts Their regiments may tread upon each other in confusion like the thirsty camels who are away from fountains and springs

---

## HIS SERMON No 111

### On God and the Holy Prophet

All praise is due to God Who is known to the people by His creations Who is revealed in the hearts of the people by His arguments He created the people without any reflection and premeditation for reflection is an attribute of those who have conscience and God is without it His knowledge has revealed the hidden things His knowledge surrounds the hidden knots

He says about the Holy Prophet —

God made the Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be on him) the most prominent of all the prophets from the family of the Prophets the fountain of knowledge and light of the world He is a great physician (for spiritual diseases) The ointment of his knowledge is very strong and unfailing His pieces of advice and his instructions are very sound and rational He uses them where necessary There are persons whose hearts become blind There are ears which do not hear truth There are tongues which are dumb to tell the truth All these are very fatal diseases He cures them with his ointment and to remove these defects he uses the above instruments

(of advice and instructions) The special feature of this physician is that he searches for his patients where ignorance prevails. He searches for those houses where there is no peace and where confusion reigns. There are such places as have no light of knowledge. They did not kindle the fire with the shining knowledge nor did they have any love for education and learning. They were like hard stones or grazing animals. Verily he revealed knowledge to the wise persons. He showed the straight path to the misguided people which can be seen by every person provided that he has mental eye. Nothing can prevent me from looking into you. You have neither wisdom and understanding nor do the instructions and sound pieces of advice benefit you. Why should I not take you for bodies without souls? You are lifeless people! Alas! I find you praying to God but you are not pious. You are such businessmen as can not derive any benefit. Though you are waking yet really you are sleeping. Though you are present yet really you are absent. Those of you who have sense are quite blind. You are deaf and dumb. You are in ignorance. The flags of deception and ignorance are already spread. Its branches are spreading in the vicinity. They shall take possession of your property according to their desires and they shall give you punishment according to their strength. The leader of this coming darkness and ignorance is away from Islam. He is on the wrong path. Nothing shall then remain with you except what is left at the bottom of the Kettle. You shall be trees without fruits because of strong winds. The coming catastrophe shall reduce you to abject poverty. The coming catastrophe shall crush you down. Just as the cock picks up big grains and leaves the small ones in the same way the true Momins (Muslims) shall be picked up and tortured. I do not know where these roads will take you. How far will this darkness confound you. How long will these deliberate lies tempt and allure you. Where you will go and where you will return. Every period has its end. There is reaction for every action. What will be your fate on the Day of Judgment if you are involved in these things? What will be your punishment on that day? Listen to the words of the Caliph of God. Obey him. Be ready to follow his commands. If he calls you get up at once from your lethargy. It is the bounden duty of the leader of the caravan to speak the truth. He should gather his disunited and scattered

people He should reveal to you the truth Undoubtedly your leader has clearly and fully explained to you all about this critical and perilous situation It should be known to you that when these seditions shall spread the falsehood shall be merciless and tyrant, ignorance shall ride upon its horses there shall be revolts and rebellions the number of religious persons shall be considerably reduced Time shall attack the people like wild beasts When there will be silence it will shout like an intoxicant camel People shall give up their religion They shall be lost in corruptions and evils To tell lies will be regarded to be a good thing Those who will speak the truth shall be punished and tortured The sons shall persecute their parents in such an age Rainy season shall be replaced by hot summer season The people of that age shall become wolves The rulers shall be wild beasts The people of the middle class shall be bent upon doing illegal and unlawful things The beggars and the needy persons shall die of starvation Truth shall be buried deep in the ground The rivers of falsehood shall flow There shall be only hypocrisy and no true love There shall be malice and enmity in the hearts of the people The bastards shall spread Piety and chastity shall be viewed with wonder People shall put on the dress of Islam like mad persons who wear upturned fur garment

---

## HIS SERMON No 112

### On God

Everything bows down before God Everything exists due to Him He makes beggars rich He elevates the disgraced persons He makes the poor strong He gives protection to those who are afraid If any person speaks to Him He listens to him He knows the secrets of those persons who keep quiet He is the nourisher of every person Any person who dies goes to him O God! the eyes did not see Thee that they may give Thy description Thou existed before the creations who praise Thee Thou did not create Thy creatures to remove Thy loneliness nor didst He do it for His benefit He whom Thou called could not excel Thee and he

whom Thou took under Thy possession did not dare to run away. Thy kingdom is not marred in any way if people disobey Thee, and Thy kingdom does not extend if people obey Thee. Those who are displeased with Thy orders cannot reject them and those who refuse to abide by the commandments and prohibitions cannot be independent of Thee. Thou knowest every secret and every hidden thing is revealed to Thee. Thou art eternal. Thou hast no end. Thou art the goal of everything. None can escape Thee. Every one shall have to render his account to Thee. The forehead of every movable object is under Thy control. Every person shall return to Thee. Good God! Thy creations are very big and vast, yet despite their greatness they look small before Thee. Thy kingdom which I see is very dreadful and frightful. Thou showerest blessings on this earth but as compared with the blessings in the next world, they pale into insignificance.

In the same sermon he says :—

Thou created the angels to live high up on the skies. They know Thee more than other creatures of Thine. They are greatly afraid of Thee and they are nearest Thee. They are not born of any parents through sexual intercourse, nor have the changes of time divided them. Although these angels live near Thee, their position is elevated, they are lost in Thy prayers, they never do anything against Thy commandments, yet if they see Thy secrets which are hidden from Thee, they shall consider their actions to be very insignificant, they shall find fault with them and they shall arrive at this definite conclusion that they did not offer the prayers which Thou deserved. Thou art holy and good. Thou art creator. Thou art to be worshipped. Thou tested Thy creatures. Thou made Heavens which were provided with choicest foods and drinks. Thou created the virgins of Paradise and the boys who attend the virtuous in Paradise. Thou built good palaces, made streams flow and agriculture prosper. Thou made fresh fruit grow. Then Thou sent a person to invite people to enjoy those blessings but the people did not accept his invitation, nor did they show any desire and inclination for those things. But they turned to worldly enjoyments.

They were disgraced by indulging in them. They were unanimous in the enjoyment of the worldly pleasures. If a man loves a thing, he becomes blind of its faults. His heart is diseased. He sees things with his defective eyes and hears with his defective ears. Such a man is a worldly person. He is the slave of the thing which is in his hand. He inclines where it inclines and goes where it goes. He never abstains from it if the messenger of God prevents him from it, nor does he listen to the advice of the person who is appointed for this purpose, although he sees with his eyes the plight of the misguided people. He sees how death of which they were ignorant comes to them. They are separated from this world which they considered to be their refuge and protection. He sees how they turn to the next world of which promise was made to them. Deaths are very frequent amongst them. They are in the midst of their friends and relatives but none of them can help them. Now when they are on the point of death they see with their eyes, they hear with their ears, their brains are nicely working, they are in their senses. They now reflect how they passed their lives, what good actions they did. Now they remember their goods and properties which they accumulated and when they were amassing them, they never cared whether they were legal or illegal. They amassed them by any means, fair or foul. Now they feel that they shall be separated from these goods and properties. These things shall be left for their heirs who shall enjoy them while they themselves shall suffer for them. Death is overpowering them. They are in the midst of their families but they cannot talk to them nor can they hear anything. They see the members of their families moving their tongues but they cannot understand what they speak. Now they breathed their last. Their dead bodies are left amongst their children. Now people go away from them. None likes to go to them. They cannot now respond to those who call them nor can they help those who weep and cry for them. They are then buried in the graves and they are left there to their fate. Now people are deprived of seeing them till the Day of Judgment when people shall be called to render the account of their lives.

On the Day of Judgment, God shall shake the sky which shall break. Then there shall be earthquakes. The moun-



tains on the earth shall be uprooted and displaced. What ever is under ground shall be taken out. He shall then re create people when their bones shall have rotten. Then they shall be separated after a careful examination of their good and bad deeds. There shall be two groups. One shall be rewarded and the other shall be punished. The blessed ones shall enjoy the blessings of Paradise for ever. They shall never leave it nor shall there be any change in their condition. They will not be afraid. They will never fall ill. They will not be destroyed. They shall never go out of paradise. As regards the sinful persons they shall live in a very bad place. Their hands shall be tied to their necks with chains. Their foreheads shall be bent to their feet. Their dress shall be made of melted copper. They shall be made to put on burning fires. This punishment shall be very severe. They shall be tortured in a house whose doors shall be closed. They will live in such a fire that shall feel inclined to burn them. Horrible and dreadful sounds shall be produced there. Flames shall burn there very brightly. Those who will live in this fire shall never come out. No ransom shall be accepted for releasing them from that place. This house shall be eternal and those who shall live there shall be there perpetually and permanently.

The Holy Prophet Mohammad (May peace of God be on him) considered this world to be very disgraceful and bad. He attached no importance to this world, and taught others to look down upon it. God elevated and exalted him, so he was away from the allurements and temptations of this world. God allowed the infidels to enjoy the pleasures of this world. The Holy Prophet turned his face from this world with great contempt. He forgot this world and he wished to be away from the temptations of this world. The Holy Prophet tried his level best to preach Islam and left no excuse for the people. He gave instructions to his followers. He frightened them of the punishments of the hell and he told them the blessings of Paradise and invited them to it.

O People! let it be known to you that we are the descendants of the Holy Prophet. Angels come to us. We are the fountains of learning. We are the springs of wisdom.

and knowledge of God. He who is our friend and helper deserves the mercy of God and he who is our enemy waits for the punishment of God

---

## HIS SERMON NO. 113

### How to know God ?

The following are the best of all the means for the attainment of the access and proximity to God—to have faith in God and the Holy Prophet, to fight for God because Jihad (fighting for God) is a pillar of Islam to offer prayers for it is the support and pillar of the religion to pay poor rate for it is obligatory and compulsory upon Muslims, to observe fast in the month of Ramzan for it is a shield against the punishment of God, to go on the pilgrimage to Mecca for it removes poverty and wipes out sins, to take pity on others for it increases wealth and postpones death to give charity secretly for it covers our sins, to give charity openly for it removes bad type of death, to show kindness and favours to the creatures of God for it prevents people from falling into disgrace and insult

O People ! try to praise God for it is the best work. Try to get Paradise which is promised to the pious and verily His promise is true. Follow the instructions of your Prophet for they are the best instructions. Follow the lead of your Prophet for he is the best guide. Learn the Holy Quran for it is the best book. Ponder over it for it enlightens and refreshes the heart. Seek the light of the Quran for the disease of your ignorance, for it cures the hearts. Read it carefully and try to understand it. Take instructions from it for it is very beneficial. Verily that learned man who acts against his knowledge is no better than the confounded and perplexed illiterate and ignorant persons. Such a learned person is very bad. He shall be disgraced and humiliated. He shall get the worst punishment.

## HIS SERMON No 114

### On the Evils of the World

After praising God and the Holy Prophet O People I tell you to be afraid of this world for it looks very sweet, charming and tempting. People hanker after it because of their passions. People love it because its pleasures are transitory. Though it will last for a short time yet it is attractive. It is beautified with hopes. It is decorated with cunningness and treachery. Its pleasures shall not last for ever nor can there be any refuge and protection from its dangers and troubles. This world is treacherous, deceptive and harmful. It checks people from thinking of the next world. It is subject to decay and destruction. It eats up its victims. It destroys those who are involved in it. When the people who are attacked by the temptations of this world, reach the zenith of their ambitions, then the world does not take them to any further and higher place. God says 'Like water which We send down from the cloud so the herbage of the earth becomes luxuriant on account of it, then it becomes dry, broken into pieces which the winds scatter, and Allah is the holder of power over all things'—The Holy Quran Part XV Ch XVIII 45

Similar is the condition of this world. Now it is green but very soon it becomes dry and people perish. There is no unmixed blessing in this world. If a person is happy for one moment, he has to weep the next moment. There is no one who enjoys the pleasures of this world and then he has not to undergo the sufferings and troubles of this world. If fortune smiles upon a man very soon it frowns upon him. The man who hankers after this world deserves this punishment. If the world makes friendship with a man in the morning it becomes his enemy in the evening. If the world appears to him sweet and charming from one side it looks bitter and ugly from the other side. None realises his aim in this world unless it subjects him to great troubles and misfortunes. Every person passes his day and night in hope, fear and danger. This world is a great fraud and deception. All things which are found in this world are mortal. It destroys them who become its servants. If there is anything which can help a man in the next world it is piety. There

is no good in anything of this world excepting piety and chastity. He who takes a little share in this world gets much in the next world. He shall be safe from punishments and tortures. He who accumulates much wealth of this world accumulates much of those things which are responsible for his destruction and he shall be deprived of those things very soon. The world deceives him who depends upon it. The world throws him down who relies upon it. The world degrades and disgraces a person who becomes a man of wealth and position. If a man becomes proud and arrogant the world disgraces and humiliates him. The worldly empires are subject to changes. Its pleasures are not worth while. Its sweetness is bitter. Its food is poison. Its goods are about to burn. Its life is death. Its health is really a disease. This cruel and tyrant world is really subject to tyranny and oppression. The worldly people are perplexed and confounded.

O People! Do you not live in a place where people lived whose ages were much longer than yours whose relics were more lasting than yours whose inordinate ambitions were much greater than yours who had much more importance than you who had big armies. They served this world in various ways. They adopted the ways of this world through various means. But despite all these things, they left this world. They neither took any provisions for the next world nor did they get any conveyance which might take them to their destination. Have you heard that the world spared them even for a moment? Did it help them in any way? Did it show any favour to them? Nay, it put them to great difficulties and troubles. It weakened them by miseries. They were confounded by the catastrophies of times. It troubled and punished them. Undoubtedly you have seen that the world was faithless to them who were hankering after it and who were inclined towards it. At last they had to leave this world for good. They took no provisions for the way excepting hunger and thirst. They took nothing with them from this world but disgrace and humiliation. Then why do you hanker after this world which has so many qualifications? Will you be still greedy of this world? Are you satisfied with it? Let it be known to you clearly that this world is a very bad place for a man who does

baby in the womb of the mother ? How does it enter there ? Does the soul take permission from God to go out ? Does death live in the womb with the baby ? How can a person describe the attributes of God when he is quite helpless to describe the attributes of a creature like himself ?

---

## HIS SERMON No 116

### On the Evils of the World

I frighten you of this world This is the house whose foundations are to be up rooted This is not the house of ease and comfort It is decorated to tempt the people It is adorned to deceive them This is the house which disgraces the people It is the cause of their humiliation and insult Lawful and unlawful things are mixed here Its virtues are full of mischiefs Its sweet things have a touch of bitterness God did not wish it for His friends They, therefore, did not get worldly grandeur He is not miserly in conferring the blessings of this world upon His enemies Virtues are rarely found here Mischiefs can be had in plenty here Its wealth and property are subject to destruction Its buildings shall soon perish Now tell me what good is there in this house which is perishable and destructible What good is there in this life which finishes and perishes like the provisions of the way What good is there in this age which comes to an end like the journeys of a traveller

O People ! Carry out the commandments of God Seek the help of God in the discharge of those duties which God has made obligatory upon you Be ready to die before Death calls you Really the hearts of those persons who though living in this world are indifferent to it weep Though they may have the pleasures of this world they are sad and grieved Though they may have all the luxuries and comforts of this world, they get angry with their passions They do not care if they get the share of their livelihood

O People ! You have forgotten Death You are always after false ambitions The world has overpowered you World affairs engage you more than the affairs of the next world Know it well that according to Islam all of

not consider it to be disgraceful and who does not pass his life in fear and danger Alas! You are so busy in the affairs of this world although you know it well that you shall leave it You follow the instructions of those persons who told you before that they were stronger and more powerful than others Listen! They were sent to their graves but they did not go there with pomp and show They were made to stay in their graves but they were not respected there as guests Now their graves are but the heaps of stones The earth is their shroud Rotten bones are their neighbours They are such neighbours that they do not listen even if they are called one hundred times However, they may be persecuted and tortured but they cannot stop them They have no tears in their eyes to weep If the people of the world are kind to them, they cannot get peace and happiness If people stop their hands from showing favours to them, they are not disappointed They live at one place (grave yard) but they are separated They are neighbours but they live apart from one another (They are indifferent to one another) They are very near but they cannot see one another In spite of their close associations and relations, they cannot go to one another They have now spirit of toleration There is no malice in their hearts now They are ignorant They are no longer envious of one another They have no ambitions and aspirations now The world is replaced by underground place for them They have accepted to live in a small place instead of a vast and bigger one They like that wild and lonely place Their bright and shining world is replaced by a dark one Now they will come out on earth quite bare and naked They will then go to their eternal place with their actions God says —“As We originated the first creation, (so) We shall reproduce it, a promise (binding) on Us, Surely We will bring it about” —Holy Quran Part XVII Chap XXI 104

---

## HIS SERMON No. 115

### On Death

When death enters any house, can any person feel it with his senses? When it takes away the soul of any person, does any one see it? How does it take away the soul of a

baby in the womb of the mother ? How does it enter there ? Does the soul take permission from God to go out ? Does death live in the womb with the baby ? How can a person describe the attributes of God when he is quite helpless to describe the attributes of a creature like himself ?

---

## HIS SERMON No 116

### On the Evils of the World

I frighten you of this world This is the house whose foundations are to be up rooted This is not the house of ease and comfort It is decorated to tempt the people It is adorned to deceive them This is the house which disgraces the people It is the cause of their humiliation and insult Lawful and unlawful things are mixed here Its virtues are full of mischiefs Its sweet things have a touch of bitterness God did not wish it for His friends They, therefore did not get worldly grandeur He is not miserly in conferring the blessings of this world upon His enemies Virtues are rarely found here Mischiefs can be had in plenty here Its wealth and property are subject to destruction Its buildings shall soon perish Now tell me what good is there in this house which is perishable and destructible What good is there in this life which finishes and perishes like the provisions of the way What good is there in this age which comes to an end like the journeys of a traveller

O People ! Carry out the commandments of God Seek the help of God in the discharge of those duties which God has made obligatory upon you Be ready to die before Death calls you Really the hearts of those persons who though living in this world are indifferent to it weep Though they may have the pleasures of this world they are sad and grieved Though they may have all the luxuries and comforts of this world they get angry with their passions They do not care if they get the share of their livelihood

O People ! You have forgotten Death You are always after false ambitions The world has overpowered you World affairs engage you more than the affairs of the next world Know it well that according to Islam all of

you are brothers Nothing can separate you from one another It is the malice of your hearts which disunites and divides you What has become of you that when you get a little of worldly things you are overjoyed and you do not become sad in the least when you are deprived of great rewards in the next world If you lose a little of any worldly thing you are sad and perplexed you look impatient and sorrowful for this little loss You consider as if you will live in this world permanently and its wealth and property shall remain with you for ever What prevents you from exposing the defects and evils of others but the fear that they will also disclose your shortcomings and evils In these circumstances the worldly considerations and the indifference to the next world are the basis of your friendship Religion is only on your lips and not in your hearts This nature of yours is like that of a slave who after doing the work for his master sits at ease and does nothing

---

## HIS SERMON No 117

### On Piety

All praise is due to God Who combines praise with blessings and blessings with gratitude I praise Him for the blessings which He confers upon me as well as for the misfortunes which come over me I seek the help of God to make me energetic in the discharge of the duties imposed on me by Him I repent for the sins which God knows because of His knowledge His knowledge is not wanting in any respect His Book is such a Book as has not left anything without enumeration I believe in Him in such a way as if I have seen Him and all the hidden things which are promised This kind of faith prevents me from heathenism and changes scepticism to certainty I testify that there is no god but God He is unique and has no co worker and Muhammad (may peace of God be on him and his descendants) is His servant and His Apostle These two witnesses increase Faith they exalt prayers and good actions When they will be weighed they shall be very heavy If these two things are taken away prayers and good actions become very light O People! I advise you to be



worst of all punishment and the reward of God is the best of all rewards. Worldly things have importance and significance only if they are heard and not seen. The importance and significance of the things existing in the next world shall be greatly increased if they are seen rather than heard. Remember that it is better to have less in this world and more in the next world rather than to have more here and less in the next world. Verily you have more lawful and legal things than unlawful and illegal things. Abstain from illegal and forbidden things which are only a few in number for the sake of legal and lawful things which are more in number. It is decidedly true that God is responsible for your livelihood. Be busy in prayers and good deeds. In these circumstances, it is undesirable on your part to exert more for your livelihood which is already allotted to you and neglect those duties which are imposed upon you.

Despite all these things, by God! you are becoming sceptics and conviction is regarded to be bad. You are under the impression that it is your bounden duty to work hard for the livelihood, for which God is responsible and you think that the responsibility of doing what is really obligatory upon you (Prayers) is withdrawn from you. O People! make haste in doing good deeds. Be afraid of sudden death for there is not the slightest hope for regaining the past life. What ever part of your life is passed is passed. It can never come back. There is hope for the future, but there is absolutely no hope for the return of the past. Fear God which is legitimate. It is highly desirable that whenever you die, you must die as a Muslim.

---

### HIS SERMON No. 118.

#### Prayer for Rains.

O God! our mountains are cracked for want of rain. Our earth is full of dust. Our beasts are thirsty. They are confounded and perplexed. They are crying like women whose sons are dead. They wander here and there for grass in the pasture but become sad (because there is no grass). There is no water for them to drink and so they are very sad. O God! have mercy over the cries of the goats. Pity on the

camels O God ! minimise their sufferings and troubles  
 See to their lamentations which they do as soon as they enter  
 their cattle-sheds O God ! we have come out of our houses  
 for Your mercy We cannot bear the sight of the famine  
 stricken camels Now Thou art the only hope of the dis-  
 appointed people Thou grantest our appeal We appeal  
 to Thee in such a condition when we are quite disappointed  
 and despondent Clouds have stopped rains Grazing  
 animals have perished O God ! we request Thee not to  
 punish us for our sins Shower Thy mercy upon us May  
 the sky be overclouded ! May it rain cats and dogs ! May  
 grass grow ! May it rain so much that those things which are  
 dead for want of rain may be alive and those crops may be  
 come green which are faded O God ! we pray to Thee for  
 such rains as may give life to the dead May it satisfy our  
 needs ! May it be holy ! May it be a blessing ! May it be  
 pleasant and good ! Exult Thy weak creatures May green  
 grass grow ! May the branches of trees bear fruits ! May  
 the citizens who are dead become alive due to Thy mercy  
 O God ! we want such rains as may make our high lands  
 green Our small streams may flow Irrigation work may  
 be carried on in the vicinity through them Fresh fruits  
 may grow in plenty May our animals be alive ! May  
 those persons who are far away from us benefit from it !  
 Accept our prayer Thy blessings are vast The door of  
 Thy charity is opened to the needy and helpless people and  
 wild beasts O God ! Give us such rains as may make us  
 wet and continuously fall Water may flow on earth There  
 may be no lightening and thunder without rains Clouds  
 may not be scattered and waterless When it rains there  
 should be no cold wind because it is injurious to agriculture  
 and fruits May the famine stricken people be alive !  
 Verily when people become despondent Thou makest rain  
 fall Thou spreadest the clouds of Thy mercy Thou art  
 the nourisher Thou art the Master Thou art the Ruler  
 Thou deservest all praise

## HIS SERMON No 119

### On the Holy Prophet and Himself

God sent the Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be on him and his descendants) in this world. He invited the people to truth. He gave the message of God to the people without minimising or magnifying it. He fought for God against His enemies without the least hesitation and slackness. He is leader of the pious and the holy. He gives eyes to those who earnestly seek guidance and lead.

In the same sermon he says —

If you have the same knowledge of the hidden things which I have you shall run to the graves and heaps of dust. You shall weep day and night for your actions. You shall at once leave your property in such a condition that none will like to take care of it nor will you get any heir to inherit it. But alas! you have forgotten what you had learnt. You consider that thing to be your protector of which you were frightened. Now your plans are upset. Your affairs are confused and scattered. Now I pray to God to separate me from you and mix me with those persons who were better than you. By God! the opinions of those persons were sound and blessed. They were wise and patient. They were truthful and honest. They gave up rebellions and oppressions. They died as Muslims. They always followed the straight path and were crowned with success in the next world. They were fortunate and blessed. By God! the son of an ill and harsh natured and tall statured tyrant shall be your ruler. He will eat up your prosperous fields and melt your fats.

---

## HIS SERMON No 120

### On Miserliness.

God has bestowed upon you wealth and property but you did not give them away in charity for Him. God has created you but you did not sacrifice your passions for His sake. You are the selected and chosen ones of all the creatures of God but you do not show your gratitude and respect.

to God among His creation Take warnings from those persons who have died before you and remember that you are being cut off from your nearest brothers

---

### HIS SERMON No. 121.

#### On his Companions.

You are the helpers of the true Religion You are the brethren in Religion In days of difficulties and misfortunes you are the shields of one another You know the secrets of one another Depending upon your help and support, I fight against those persons who turn against Truth I depend upon your support and I hope that they who fight against me shall yield to me Now accept my pieces of advice and instructions which are free from cunningness and treachery and which are above doubts and suspicions Help me By God! I am the most deserving of help and it is your bounden duty to help me

---

### HIS SERMON No 122

*(Hazrat Ali called people and persuaded them to fight for God They were silent to bear it He then delivered this sermon) —*

What made you dumb? Hearing this, a party said, "Amirul Momineen! If you set out for Jihad, we shall accompany you" Thereupon he said —

What happened to you that you have left the straight path? You have not been successful in any of your aims Is it proper for me to set out on this expedition in person? Nay, he whom I select shall be the leader of this expedition He whom I shall choose will be one of your chivalrous persons He shall be one of the experienced soldiers I have to look to the protection of the army and the cities, to guard the Public Treasury, to collect the land revenue to settle the disputes of the Muslims, and to protect the rights of the claimants I have to do all these and so it is not reasonable for me to neglect them and accompany this expedition Let it be clearly known to you that I am the axis of the grind stone of

Religion This grind stone moves round me and it moves due to me so long as I am staying in my house But when I go out this grind stone is taken aback The vessel into which flour falls is perplexed and feels uneasy By God ! the suggestion that I should accompany this army is very bad By God ! If I had no desire for martyrdom while fighting with the enemy though I am fated to fight with the enemy I would have gone away from you on a horse and I would not have called you to help me till the difference between the North wind and South wind exists for it is your inherent nature to pass sarcastic remarks to blame others and to turn your faces from Truth You are timid and cowardly Undoubtedly your numerical strength is of little value if your hearts are weak I have left you on a path which is quite clear and straight None perishes on this path excepting the misguided ones Remember that he who is firm on this path goes into heaven and he who makes the slightest mistake goes into the fire of hell

---

## HIS SERMON No 123

### An Advice to his Companions

O People ! I remind you of those messages which the Holy Prophet gave you of fulfilling the promise you made to God I teach you the words of God and we the progeny of the Holy Prophet are the doors to learning and knowledge We are the lights of the Religion Remember that all the paths of Islam are one The paths of Religion are straight and middle ones Those who adopt these paths achieve their aims and reach their goal but those who go astray are lost and confounded Now is the time for you to do good deeds and to offer prayers and to gather provisions for the Day of Judgment when the good and bad actions of a man shall be exposed If the wisdom of a man cannot help him now in this world it can on no account help him in the next world Fear the fire of hell which is extremely hot and unbearable and which is very deep The jewels of those who will live there are made of iron They shall get pus and discharge to drink Beware ! If God confers upon a man a truthful and upright tongue it is much better than wealth which is inherited by posterity who never remember him with respect

On the Arbitration

(One of the companions of Hazrat Ali stood up and said "At first you prevented us from the appointment of arbitration but later on you approved of it. We are at a loss to understand the significance of this prohibition and command. Thereupon Hazrat Ali said sorrowfully —)

This is due to those persons who are the breakers of the promised pledge. Beware! By God! I ordered for the appointment of an arbitration. But despite this order I would have asked you to fight from which you refrained and God might have done some good for us. If you had remained on the straight path you would have received guidance and if you had gone astray I would have brought you on the right path. If you had disobeyed me I would have punished you. I do believe that this opinion was correct and strong but how to give this order and on whose support and help I should have issued and enforced it. I wanted to cure the ignorance of the nation with your help and cooperation but alas! you are ready to disobey me. In these circumstances I do not know how to settle this problem and how to overcome this insurmountable difficulty.

O God! the physicians of this terrible and overpowering ignorance are now disappointed and sad and the leaders and guides are tired and fed up. Where are those persons who were invited to Islam and they responded to its call. They read the Holy Quran and strengthened their faith. They were always ready to fight for God and separated their milch camels from their young ones. They took out their swords from their sheaths and spread over the land in groups. They conquered that land and some of them died in harness and some of them saved their lives. They were neither pleased with the news of those who were alive nor were they sad for those who were killed. They lost their eyesight by constant weeping. They were reduced to skeletons by fasting. Their lips had become parched by praying. They had turned pale by night prayers. The dust of prostration was on their foreheads. They were my brethren. They had gone. It is incumbent upon us to be keenly desirous of seeing them and to be sad at their separation.

O People ! The Satan is making its ways easy for you He intends to untie every knot of your religion He wants to destroy your beliefs He wishes to divide and disunite you He intends to create seditions and factions amongst you Turn your faces against him Entertain no doubts and suspicions Listen to the pieces of advice and instructions of the man who leads and guides you Make a note of those instructions and act upon them

---

## HIS SERMON No 125

### On the Kharijites

(When the Kharijites refused to accept the arbitration, separated themselves and blamed Hazrat Ali, he went to them and said —)

Were all of you present in the Battle of Siffin with us ? They said, "Some of us were present there and some of us were absent " Thereupon he said —

Now divide yourselves into two parties—one party should consist of those persons who were present there and the other party should consist of the absentees—so that I may tell you something Thereupon they began to shout He said —

Stop this shouting Listen to me attentively Turn your hearts to me He whom I call should give his witness according to his knowledge and information When the army of Muawiya hoisted the Holy Quran on their spears out of cunningness and treachery, did you not say that they were your brethren, they belonged to the same religion ? Did you not say that they also believed in one God and the Holy Prophet Did you not say that they wanted that the war should be stopped ? Did you not say that they wanted peace for war by turning to the Holy Quran ? Did you not advise me to accept their request ? Did you not tell me to give them protection ? I told you then that their hoisting of the Holy Quran upon their spears was nothing short of treachery, cunningness and cruelty I told you that you might take pity on them but it would result in your disgrace and humiliation I told you to continue the fight bravely, courageously, patient-

ly and manfully till the enemy was totally routed and not to mind his call. If you responded to his call, he would mislead and misguide you, but if you left him to his fate, he would be disgraced and humiliated. When we were fighting in the company of the Holy Prophet against our enemies, every Muslim submitted to the orders of God implicitly and unflinchingly, he bore the greatest hardships patiently and cheerfully. We fought against our brethren who were infidels. It was nothing but a fight between the truth and the falsehood. It was a fight between the Muslims and infidels. It was a fight between right and wrong. When we made peace, we did it with the intention and hope that God might unite us and bring them near to Islam. We only kept in view this side of the picture and abstained from the other side.

---

## **HIS SERMON No. 126**

### **Defend Weak People**

If a man finds himself bold and brave before his enemy and if he finds any of his brethren timid and cowardly before his enemy, it is incumbent upon him to save his brother from the enemy as a mark of gratitude for the courage and chivalry which God has bestowed upon him. He should defend his brother from the enemy with the same zeal and spirit with which he would defend himself in similar circumstances. If God had willed, he would have made him a coward also. Death is awfully busy with its work. It does not spare a man who is contended with it nor does it spare a man who tries to run away from it. But the most honourable and envious death is martyrdom. By God! it is much easier for Ibne Abi Talib to die on the battle field having received hundreds of wounds rather than to die on the death bed. I see that you are gathered together like porpoises and are shouting and howling like them, although you never imbibed the real spirit of Truth nor did you even stop any tyranny and oppression. Remember that the door of salvation is open before you. If a person fights for God, he gets salvation and goes into paradise, but if a man hesitates to participate in Jihad, he shall perish.



Those persons who are putting on armours should march on and those who are not putting on armours should remain behind Be firm and unshaken for it is a great shield against the enemy Keep your spears in your arms Attack the enemy which your spears Shut up your eyes while attacking the enemies for it will give you courage and strength Your palpitating hearts shall get peace Shout loudly bravely and boldly for you will not be cowards Remain round your flags Do not take them to any unsuitable place Never leave them alone Those of you should be flag bearers who are tried and experienced They shall ward off the dangers from you for those soldiers who have patience surround their flags when the battle rages very furiously and when there is much bloodshed They must hold the flags from all sides Such brave do not in any way retreat by handing over the flags to their enemies nor do they go so forward that the flags are left behind It is also necessary that a man should fully estimate the power of his enemy He should not spare the life of his enemy and the enemy of his brother By God ! If you run away from the battle field by the swords of the enemy you cannot save yourselves from the swords of the next world You are the nobles of Arabia You are men of positions and ranks Remember that if you will retreat God shall get angry with you You shall be disgraced and humiliated This disgrace will last for ever Note it carefully that those who run away from the battle field do not lengthen their lives nor do they escape death Who wants to go to God like the thirsty man going in a hurry to the spring of water Remember it that paradise lies under the shadow of these spears which are shining on the battle field today The pious and virtuous persons are tried here today O God ! if they do not accept truth and reject it scatter and destroy them for their sins They do not move from their places unless the constant attacks of the spears kill them and their hands heads and legs are cut off with swords They do not move from their places unless they are thrown before the armies of the enemy who are constantly marching forward and whose camels are coming behind them They cannot come out of their houses until the enemies surround their towns and their horses trample down upon their fields and pastures

On the Arbitration in the Battle of Siffin

The truth is that we have not appointed men as arbitrators but we have appointed the Holy Quran our Arbitrator. The Quran is a written document between the parties. It does not speak. It requires translators. None but men can speak on behalf of it. When those people invited us to the Quran for decision we could not turn our faces against it. God says: 'Then if you quarrel about anything, refer it to Allah and the Apostle.' Holy Quran Part V Chap IV 59

Referring the matter to God means that we should make the Book of God our arbitrator. Referring to the Prophet means that we should imitate his example and act upon his traditions. If we honestly follow the Holy Quran, we are the best people to be obeyed in accordance with the Quran. As regards your objection as to why I allowed such a long period for the decision of the arbitration, I did it deliberately so that Truth and Falsehood might be revealed to the people and perhaps God might reform the Muslims by this truce.

• O People! do not get angry with this arbitration and do not make haste in the demand of the revelation of Truth lest you should be lost in darkness and ignorance. Verily the best persons in the sight of God are those who act upon the right and just actions although in doing so they suffer worldly loss, whereas they do not adopt the wrong path although they may gain much. How long will you be confounded? Why have you become sceptics? Scepticism has made ready to move against a misguided nation. They do not see the truth. They are induced to be oppressive and cruel. They do not give up their tyranny and oppression. They are away from the teachings of the Holy Quran. They have gone astray from the straight path. But alas! You are also not reliable and dependable. You do not keep your promises and pledges. There are no such helpers amongst you with whom friendship may be made. Your condition is really pitiable. May God curse you? You have given me much trouble. I call you. I tell you my secrets and plans. When you come to me in response to my call you do not speak out truth freely and boldly. As regards keeping of the secrets you are unreliable and untrustworthy.

## HIS SERMON No 128

(When Hazrat Ali made an equal distribution of the booty some people did not approve of it and began to grumble Thereupon he delivered this sermon) —

Do you order me to gain victory with cruelty and oppression on those people over whom I am appointed Caliph ? By God ! so long as this difference between the day and the night lasts and so long as there is a single star on the sky, I shall never be cruel and tyrant. If it had been my personal property I would have divided it equally amongst the people. This booty is the wealth of God. Why should I not make equal distribution of it ? Beware ! To give wealth to undeserving persons is extravagance. God says Do not squander wastefully. Surely the squanderers are the fellows of the devils. Holy Quran Part \\\ Ch \\\VII 26 and 27

Let it be known to you that misplaced generosity elevates a man in this world but it degrades him in the next world. No person keeps his wealth in an improper place nor does he entrust it to those persons who are not deserving of it but if he does it God deprives him of their due gratitude and thanks and they become the friends of his enemies. If fortune frowns upon him any day he badly stands in need of their help but they become his worst enemies and they blame and censure him

---

## HIS SERMON No 129

### On the Kharijites

If you oppose me simply because, according to you I committed a blunder and went astray why do you consider all the followers of the Holy Prophet Muhammad to be misguided ? Why do you hold them responsible for my mistakes ? Why do you consider them to be unbelievers for my sin ? You use your swords on your shoulders against those persons who are neither guilty nor sinful and you mix them with a person who according to you is sinful although you know that the Holy Prophet stoned a married person committing

adultery to death, and offered death prayer on him. He gave his inheritance to his heirs. The Holy Prophet killed the murderer and handed over his property to his heirs. He cut off the hands of the thief. He gave whipping punishment to an unmarried person committing adultery and then he gave him his share from the booty and married him to a Muslim lady. The Holy Prophet found people guilty of sins and punished them according to their crimes but he neither deprived them of their due shares, nor did he turn them out of Islam. Of course you are very bad people. You are worse than those persons whom the Satan has thrown into hell. Verily, considering over my position, two groups shall be lost in ignorance—One group shall be lost due to their excessive love for me which will lead them astray from God and the other group shall be lost in ignorance because of their excessive enmity towards me which does not keep them on the right path. Those persons who adopt the middle policy regarding me are the best people. I advise you to follow this middle policy which is the golden one, for there is the hand of God upon this party. Do not keep yourself aloof from this party for the separation from it shall make you the slave of the Satan just as the sheep going astray from the flock becomes an easy victim of the wolf. Beware! If a person invites you to them (the Kharijites), kill him even if he is hidden under my turban. Orders were given to revive that thing which the Quran has revived and to kill that thing which the Quran has ordered to be killed. To be united on the Quran is life, and to be disunited on the Quran is death. If the Quran takes us to them, we should follow them, but if it attracts them to us, they should obey us. I did not do any thing bad for you in this matter. I did not deceive you in your work. I did not doubt your actions. You were unanimous in the appointment of the two arbitrators. Then we took promise from them not to deviate from the Quran. But they did not keep their promise. They left the truth knowingly and deliberately. Their inordinate ambition is responsible for this oppression. We had already told them definitely that we would not abide by their decision if it was based on injustice and oppression.

unfortunate He knows who will go into hell on the Day of Judgment and who will accompany the Prophets in Paradise This is the hidden knowledge which is known only to God God revealed other secrets of the future to the Holy Prophet who disclosed them to me He prayed to God that I should learn them by heart and imbibe their spirit

---

## HIS SERMON No 131

### Censure of the Basrites

O People ! You are very fond of this world but you are guests here for a short time The time of your entertainment is limited and it shall come to an end soon You are in debts and the money lenders are after you Your worldly life is very short That debt is the debt of your prayers and actions which are fixed They are not subject to changes Very often those persons who take too much pains and make much effort are lost

You are born in an age in which there is less good and more evils This is a satanic age His evil and harmful effects are far reaching It is now very easy for him to make people his victims Look around the world ! You shall see beggars dying of starvation You will see wealthy persons who are ungrateful to God You will see misers who are hoarding money You will see arrogant and haughty persons who do not listen to good advice and suggestions

Where are your good persons and benefactors ? Where are your free and generous persons ? Where are your religious and pious persons ? Have they not left this mean world for good ? Did they not leave you in this miserable and wretched world ? When they are mentioned in your company you condemn them or talk lightly of them Surely we are Allah's and to Him we shall surely return Quran Ch II 156

Seditions have spread None can stop them Now in *these circumstances you desire to go into Paradise* It is only a pious wish which shall never be realised You cannot deceive God You cannot win His favours but by prayers

and submission to His orders May God condemn them who order others to do good but who do not do any good! May God curse them who check persons from prohibitions but who cannot refrain from them

---

## HIS SERMON No 132

### On Abuzar Ghaffary

Abu Zarr! You got angry for the sake of God Invoke His help for whose sake you were angry People frightened you of this world and you frightened them of religion Now leave this world to them of whose down fall they are afraid Run away from them with the thing of whose loss you are afraid at their hands They will be deprived of many blessings of Religion which prevented them from attaching too much importance to this world There are many things which will make you self sufficient and indifferent to this world You shall know on the Day of Judgment as to who is successful there You shall also see that day that he who is jealous of the ease and comfort of others will find himself very miserable there Lead a pious and virtuous life and God will confer upon you the blessings of both the worlds Do not be familiar with any one but the truthful ones, and do not run away from any one but the false ones If you had accepted their world they would have made friendship with you If you had borrowed this world from them they would have given you protection from harm

---

## HIS SERMON No 133

### An Advice to his Companions

O different persons! O divided hearts! O People whose bodies are present but whose minds are absent! I invite you to wisdom but you hate it You are as much afraid of Truth as a goat is afraid of a lion It is a pity that I can neither reveal the truth with your help nor can I put the crooked people on the straight path O God! You know it very well that what I did, I did neither for Caliphate nor for

worldly gains, I did it simply to reveal the Truth of Thy Religion, to reform the people to give peace and protection to Thy oppressed people, and to enforce Thy commandments and prohibitions

O God! I am the first person to accept Thy Religion. I have listened to Truth with rapt attention. None but the Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace be on him) excelled me in prayers. O People! You know it very well that it is not proper that a miserly person or an ignorant person, or a tyrant, or a person who accepts bribes or person who gives up the path of the Prophet should become the Imam and Caliph over the Muslims for the protection of their booties and the chastity of their women for a miserly person will be greedy of their wealth, an ignorant person shall mislead them a tyrant shall destroy them, a person accepting bribes shall usurp their rights and a person giving up the path of the Holy Prophet shall be responsible for destruction of all the Muslims

---

## HIS SERMON No. 134

### On Death

I praise God because He punished those who deserved punishment and rewarded those who deserved rewards and I praise Him because He made me poor. He knows all the hidden things. He knows even the thoughts of men. He knows even those things which the people see stealthily. I testify that there is no god but God and Muhammad (peace be on him) is His selected servant and Apostle. My testimony is both expressed and hidden. What I testify, I testify from the core of my heart. What I say is truth. There is no touch of falsehood in it. Death is certain and inevitable. O Person! Beware lest the pomp and show of people should deceive you. Verily you saw the person who was before you who had amassed much wealth who was afraid lest it should diminish, who considered himself to be immune from the Day of Judgment due to his inordinate ambition. He thought that Death was away from him but at last it overtook him. He was caught in his place of safety and was put on his death bed. People took him on their

shoulders to his grave Did you not see those persons who had inordinate ambitions and who also built strong and fortified buildings and who amassed much wealth? But they also died and whatever they had amassed was lost Their wealth and property were divided amongst their heirs Their wives married other persons Now they can neither increase their good actions nor can they repent of their bad actions for the pleasure of God Remember that who leads a virtuous and pious life gets salvation Now you should also lead a virtuous and pious life as far as possible and do good deeds for going into Paradise for you cannot live in this world for ever You are created in this world to do good deeds for the next world Make haste in doing good deeds for this world shall perish soon

---

### HIS SERMON No 135

#### On God, the Holy Quran and the Holy Prophet

*This world and the next world both are under God Their bridles are under His control The skies and the earths have given their keys to Him Green trees bow to Him every morning and evening Due to His orders their branches shine like the flames of fire Due to His orders those trees bear fruits which you eat when they become ripe*

He further says

*The Book of God is amongst you It always speaks but it never gets tired It is a house whose pillars never fall It is so powerful that its friends and helpers are never over come*

God created the Holy Prophet Muhammad after a long lapse of the Prophets There was then much dispute and discussion over oratory There would be no Prophet after Muhammad (Peace be on him) Revelations came to an end with his death He fought for God against those persons who had turned their faces against Him They were disobeying the commandments and prohibitions of God

*This world is of little value The blind man considers it to be the aim and object of his life and he does not see*



anything beyond it. The man who has wisdom and true insight thinks that the next world and not this world is the real home. He turns his face from this world to the next world but the blind man looks at this world only. The wise man makes provision for the next world but whatever the blind man earns, he earns for this world only.

Let it be known to you that there is nothing in the world which may not give pleasure to a man in the beginning but which may not give him trouble and pain in the end. Verily a man does not find pleasure in Death. What I have said is full of wisdom. It revives the dead heart. It gives light to the blind eyes. It is heard by wise ears. It satisfies those persons who are in search of knowledge. It makes a man indifferent to the world. It saves a man from the punishment of the next world. What is that wisdom? It is the Book of God which gives you light and which makes you speak the truth. Due to it you listen to truth. Some passages of the Quran are the explanations of the other passages in it. There are no contradictions in the commandments and prohibitions.

It is a pity that you make friendship on the basis of jealousy and enmity. Your worldly ambitions are similar but you are the enemies of one another for wealth. Verily, the Satan has confounded you. He has deceived and misled you. Now there is only God to help us.

---

### HIS SERMON No 136

(When the second Caliph intended to attack the Roman empire he consulted Hazrat Ali who said —)

God stands surety for the safety of the Muslims from the enemy. God made them victorious at a time when they were only a few in number and had no chance of success. God saved them from sustaining defeat when defeat seemed to be unavoidable and inevitable. God is ever living. If you in person attack the enemy and sustain defeat, Muslims shall not get shelter even in their own towns and they will have no one to whom they should refer their matter. So you should send an experienced person to fight against the enemy and place under him soldiers who have experienced the hardships

of war and who may obey the orders of their leader. If God makes them victorious you achieve your aim but if Fortune turns against them you shall become the help and refuge of those Muslims.

---

### HIS SERMON No 137

#### On Mughira Ibne Akhnas

O unworthy son of an unworthy father ! You belong to a family which has no root and no branch. How can you fight against me ? By God ! God shall never make him victorious whom you will support and help. That man whom you will support shall never rise. Get you gone from our society. You shall never achieve your end however you may try. God shall not punish you if you give up your enmity with me.

---

### HIS SERMON No 138

#### On the Oath of Allegiance

You did not take the oath of allegiance to me without due consideration. We have no common aim, for I want your help only for God but you want to help me for worldly gains. O People ! help me. Prefer me to yourselves. By God ! I want to do justice to the oppressed persons. I will bring the tyrants to book even if they oppose me.

---

### HIS SERMON No 139

#### On Talha and Zubair

By God ! They did not break the oath of allegiance from me for any fault of mine. They did not do justice to me. They demand from me a thing which they themselves have disregarded. They want me to take blood for blood which they themselves have shed. Even if I had been an accomplice in the matter, they could not be acquitted of this charge. If he (Hazrat Usman) is murdered without my permission blood for blood shall be demanded from them. Verily justice demands that they should be punished. Undoubtedly I say

with the best of my belief and knowledge that I did not participate in any doubtful matter. There is absolutely no doubt that this party consists of rebels. They are seditious and malicious people. They are sceptics. Undoubtedly the allegation that I took part in the murder of Hazrat Usman is entirely false and baseless. The tongues (arguments) of those persons who were instigating others have been cut (refuted). By God! I shall raise such an army to fight against the enemy as shall give a crushing defeat to the enemy.

He further says —

You have turned to me just as deer and camels turn to their young ones. You told me that you were ready to take the oath of allegiance to me. I withdrew my hand but you extended your hands for homage. I did not like to take the oath of allegiance from you but you pulled my hand in haste. O God! These two persons cut off their connections with me and persecuted me. They broke the oath of allegiance and instigated the people to fight against me. O God! Untie the knots (which they have tied to fight against me) and let them fail to achieve their aim. Before the war I wanted them to ratify their oath of allegiance. Before the war I treated them kindly to ease the situation but they refused to obey the orders of God and the Holy Prophet and left them away from the safety of this world and the next world.

---

### HIS SERMON No 140

#### Prophecy about the intending dangers

When the people will twist the teachings of the Quran and the Holy Prophet according to their desires the Imam of the time will try to bring them round.

He further says in the same sermon —

There shall be bloody war. Its breasts shall be full of the milk of destruction. (It shall be very destructive). Its milk (booty) will look very sweet but its result will be very bitter. I warn you of the immediate and imminent war. You shall not be able to distinguish between right and wrong.

were more serious than those of his brethren. How can a person blame others when he himself is guilty of similar sins. If he has not committed the sin of the same nature, he might have committed greater sins. By God! If he has committed no major sin but he has done only minor sin even then his finding fault with others is a greater sin.

O man! Do not make haste in finding fault with any person, for his sin might have been excused. Do not disregard your minor sins for you may be punished for them. It is good that if a person knows the sin of any person, he should be thankful to God for He has saved him from sins. This gratitude shall prevent him from committing the sins which the other person is involved.

---

## HIS SERMON No 143

### Advice to his Companions

O People! He who has found the straight path and understood the fundamental principles of his religion must not listen to others in this matter. Beware! When an archer shoots his arrows, they sometimes miss their aim, but the arrow of words whether right or wrong never misses its aim. It is true that false words destroy the person who utters them. God is All knowing and Omnipresent.

If you say that you heard it so, it is falsehood, but if you say that you have seen it so with your own eyes, it is truth.

If a man does misplaced generosity and shows favours to undeserving and bad persons, he does not get anything but the praise of those bad and ignorant persons so long as he is paid and generous to them. Alas! Really he is not generous and charitable for he is not generous to deserving persons. If God gives wealth to any person, he should be kind to his relatives. He should entertain the Muslims with this lawful income. He should help the poor and indebted ones. He should have patience over the changes of fortune and time, for the above qualities shall make him exalted in both the worlds.

The just Imam shall punish the bad governors and officials  
The earth will offer gold and silver mines to the just Imam  
He will show you the justice of the Holy Prophet He shall  
revive the teachings of the Holy Quran and the traditions of  
the Holy Prophet

I see that a shepherd is calling his flock of sheep together  
in the evening He is about to stay in the vicinity of Kufa  
with his flags He is going to Kufa like the swarm of poison-  
ous mosquitos He is killing people in large numbers He  
shall get much wealth He will be very cruel and merciless  
He shall be accompanied by a big army By God! He  
shall scatter you on the earth Your number shall be con-  
siderably reduced So it is proper for you to act upon the  
teachings of the Quran and the Holy Prophet and follow  
the guidance of the just Imam Know it well that the Satan  
had made its paths easy for you so that you may follow  
him

---

### HIS SERMON No. 141.

#### A Warning.

No one excelled me in calling the people to Truth, and  
in showing favours and kindness to others Listen to what  
I say Learn by heart what I speak, lest you should find  
swords drawn for Caliphate tomorrow and lest you should  
find promises broken, so much so that some of you will  
find yourselves lost in ignorance and followers of the false  
Imam

---

### HIS SERMON No. 142.

#### On the Evils of Backbiting

It is desirable for those persons who are not sinful to have  
mercy over those persons who are sinful They ought to be  
grateful to God for their chastity It prevents them from  
backbiting against any person A person whose sins are  
hidden must not explore the sins of others and blame them  
Does he not remember how God has concealed his sins which

were more serious than those of his brethren How can a person blame others when he himself is guilty of similar sins If he has not committed the sin of the same nature, he might have committed greater sins By God ! If he has committed no major sin but he has done only minor sin even then his finding fault with others is a greater sin

O man ! Do not make haste in finding fault with any person for his sin might have been excused Do not disregard your minor sins for you may be punished for them It is good that if a person knows the sin of any person, he should be thankful to God for He has saved him from sins Thus gratitude shall prevent him from committing the sins which the other person is involved

---

## HIS SERMON No 143

### Advice to his Companions

O People ! He who has found the straight path and understood the fundamental principles of his religion must not listen to others in this matter Beware ! When an archer shoots his arrows they sometimes miss their aim but the arrow of words, whether right or wrong never misses its aim It is true that false words destroy the person who utters them God is All knowing and Omnipresent

If you say that you heard it so, it is falsehood but if you say that you have seen it so with your own eyes it is truth

If a man does misplaced generosity and shows favours to undeserving and bad persons, he does not get anything but the praise of those bad and ignorant persons so long as he is paid and generous to them Alas ! Really he is not generous and charitable for he is not generous to deserving persons If God gives wealth to any person, he should be kind to his relatives He should entertain the Muslims with this lawful income He should help the poor and indebted ones He should have patience over the changes of fortune and time, for the above qualities shall make him exalted in both the worlds

## On Good and Bad Persons

The mean person only thinks of upkeeping the goodness amongst undeserving persons. Whatever actions he does, as a matter of fact, nothing is for him. Only he wishes that mean and false persons praise him. Mischievous persons go on engaging themselves in his praise and calumniate him. Illiterate persons praise him. But this is limited only so far as he goes on showing favours to them. Alas! what does he bestow to others. In the way of God he is miser. He does not do good to those who deserve. Then what is the use of his so called generosity.

A man upon whom God bestows wealth should show kindness to his near kin. That the legal amount of wealth that he possesses, he should entertain his fellow believer. He should ransom from his wealth the captives and those who are under debts. He should bestow from his wealth money to the needy and those who are under debts and he should exercise patience and control his lust in order to achieve the good reward. For, to overcome all these bad habits the object is the goodness which a man desires in the next world.

## HIS SERMON No 145

## Prayer for Rains

Remember that this earth upon which you live and the sky which overshadows you are both dependent upon God. Every day both of them do you favours and confer upon you blessings. They do these favours to you neither because they want to win you over to them nor do they expect any good from you but because God has appointed them to do good to you. They obey the orders of God. They have been made to stand to do good to you and so they stand. There is no doubt that God makes people suffer for scarcity of fruits when there is much corruption. He stops rain. He shuts the doors of his favours so that people may still repent of their sins; they may still remember God and abstain from indulging in corruptions. Really God has made repentance

the means of increasing one's livelihood and invoking His blessings God says — 'Ask forgiveness of your Lord - Surely He is the most Forgiving' Holy Quran Part XXIX .  
Ch LXI 10

So blessed is he who repents of his sins and turns to good.

O God ! Hearing the cries of animals and children, we have come out of our houses for Thy mercy We invoke Thy mercy We hope Thy favour and blessings We are afraid of Thy punishment and anger O God ! Let it rain ! Do not disappoint us Do not destroy us by famine and scarcity O Merciful and kind God ! Thou should not punish us for the actions of the foolish persons amongst us O God ! We pray to Thee not to send us to our houses disappointed and despondent Do not punish us in proportion to our sins O God ! Let rain fall Shower Thy blessings and favours upon us Let such rain fall as may be beneficial and as may grow plants Let those things grow which have perished for want of rain Revive those things which are dead now Let useful rain fall so that fruits may grow in abundance Water our plain fields Let our low grounds be over flooded Let there be leaves on trees Let everything be cheap Thou art strong and All powerful

---

## HIS SERMON No. 146

### On Injustice

He created the Prophets and sent them revelations - He made them His proofs for His creation He left no argument for them So these Prophets invited the people to the straight path God sent the Holy Prophet Muhammad and informed him of all the conditions of the people He was neither ignorant of their secrets which they had concealed nor was He ignorant of their intentions He did it to test them as to which of them became good persons so that their good and bad actions might be equal

Where are those persons who claim to be very wise and learned ? They speak lies against us and do injustice to us



for God has elevated our position and He has made them inferior to us. He has conferred upon us this position and He has deprived them of it. He is kind to us and not to them. He has made us guides for those who seek guidance. He has opened the eyes of the people through us. Verily the Imams shall be from the Quraish who are the descendants of Banu Hashim. None but the Banu Hashim deserves Imamatus.

He says in the same sermon —

People preferred this world to the next world. They preferred the earthly wine to the celestial wine. I see their false Imam who is fond of prohibitions. He loves illegal things. The hair of his head has turned white in corruptions. He is born in illegal things. He looks at the true Imam with great anger. Foam is coming out from his mouth. He is like that stormy river which does not care for the drowning of any one or he is like fire in hay which consumes every thing.

Where are those wise persons who are bright with the lamps of guidance? Where are those eyes which see the signs of piety? Where are those hearts which have sold themselves for God and who are ever ready to obey the orders of God? Let them see how these persons are bent upon worldly gains and how they are fighting among themselves for power and pelf. Heaven and Hell are made for them, but they have turned their faces against Heaven and are going to Hell. God called them but they fled from Him. The Satan invited them and they turned to him.

---

HIS SERMON No. 147.

On Death.

The grass which he has piled up shall perish and fresh grass will not grow for him Our ancestors died We who are their descendants, are alive Can the branches remain if the trees perish ?

He further says —

No innovation crept in religion so long as people followed the teachings of the Quran and the Holy Prophet Abstain from these innovations Follow the path of Shariat, for those principles which are fixed by God and the Holy Prophet are the best All the innovations are mischievous

---

### HIS SERMON No. 148.

(Advice to Hazrat Umar )

(When the second Caliph wanted to go to fight against the Persian army in person, he consulted Hazrat Ali in the matter Thereupon he said —)

The victory or defeat of Islam does not depend upon big or small army Islam is the religion of God He has made it predominant over other religions The army of Islam is the army of God Who has helped it everywhere and has raised it to a very high position Its sun rose where it was necessary to rise We have strong faith in the promise of God which He has made about the victory and predominance of Islam Verily He shall fulfil His promise He shall help His army The leader of the Muslims is like the thread of pearl beads If the thread breaks, all the pearls are scattered Today, although the Arabs are not numerically strong, yet due to Islam they look grand and strong Undoubtedly they shall overcome their enemy due to their unity You should be like the guiding star and send the Muslim army under the command of any other person and you give him directions to conduct the war If you go out of Madina, all the tribes of Arabia will attack the city It will be more necessary for you then to protect the women who are left behind rather than to fight against the Persians Secondly, if tomorrow the Persians will see you, they will say, "He is the Caliph of the Arabs " If you defeat them, there shall be

nothing but perice. But they shall try their level best to arrest you. You say that the Persian army is attacking the Muslims. God does not like this aggressive attitude of the Persians. Verily God is Almighty and All Powerful. As regards the numerical superiority of the Persian army over the Arabs, consider the Holy Prophet never fought with his enemy with a big army. He always waged wars against the unbelievers with the help of God.

---

## HIS SERMON No 149

### On Future Troubles

God created the Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace be on him) so that he might take the people from the worship of the idols and the Satan to the worship of one God. He conferred upon him the Holy Quran. It revealed His miracles. It strengthened His Reality so that ignorant persons may recognize Him and the atheists may admit His Existence. God Who is above any fault and defect was revealed to the people through His Book. He showed His powers through His Book. He frightened the people of His Grandeur. He told them how He had destroyed those people who had oppressed others and how He had killed them who had mercilessly murdered others.

O People! The time is at hand after me when truth shall be concealed and falsehood shall prevail. People shall tell lies against God and the Holy Prophet. Only a few persons shall read the Holy Quran. Meanings of the Holy Quran shall be twisted. People shall hate the commandments of God and love the prohibitions of God. The protectors and helpers of the Holy Quran shall disregard its teachings. The Holy Quran and the learned persons both shall be banished out of towns. They shall travel together. None shall give them protection. Both of them will be there at that time but they will have no supporters and friends. There can be no compromise between ignorance and guidance though they may live together.

People shall then live apart from the Book of God and learned persons. They shall be separated from true Muslims.

They will consider themselves to be the Imams of the Book of God. The Quran shall no longer be their guide. It shall be like dead letter for them. They shall persecute the pious persons in various ways.

O People! Those who lived before you perished because of their inordinate ambitions and because they regarded death to be far away from them. The promised death overtook them and they could not escape the inevitable death. Death does not accept the repentance of any person. It is accompanied by catastrophes.

O People! Blessed are those who accept the advice of God. And those who follow the instructions of God become His near ones. Verily the neighbours of God enjoy peace and protection. The enemies of God are in constant fear and danger. Those who understand the grandeur of God do not think it proper to consider themselves grand. Their greatness lies in prostrating their faces before Him. It is better for those who understand His powers to submit to Him. Do not hate the true Imam just as a healthy person hates those who are suffering from contagious diseases. Know it well that you can never get guidance unless you understand the person who has gone astray and is lost in ignorance. You can never understand the promise of the Book of God unless you understand the person who has broken the promise of the Book of God. You can never understand the Quran unless you understand the person who has thrown it away. Inquire into the matter from those persons who understand the Quran for they give life to knowledge and death to ignorance. They enforce the commandments and prohibitions of God due to their learning. They keep quiet over falsehood. Their external piety is connected with their internal strong faith. They are not against religion nor do they differ in religious matters. Faith is their true guide and speaks to them silently.

---

## HIS SERMON No. 150

### On the Basrites

Each of these two persons (Talha and Zubair) expects to be Imam and wants to usurp Imamate. Alas! They do

not attach themselves to the rope of guidance nor are they attracted to God by any means Every one of their party is jealous Their jealousy shall be exposed soon By God if they get the thing which they desire then each of them shall try to get rid of the other by killing him

The rebellious party is ready Where are the virtuous persons ? Where are the persons to enforce the commandments of God ? Let them come The path of Shariat is shown to them They are already informed of it by the Holy Prophet Remember that there is reason for every darkness There is some doubt for the breaker of a promise By God ! I am not like the person who hears the sad news of the death of a person with rapt attention and comes weeping before him

---

## HIS SERMON No 151

### Before his Martyrdom

O People ! Every person has to meet death which he hates while he is after worldly gains Death is inevitable The life of every person drives him to death To run away from death is impossible I spent every day of my life in searching for it but God kept it a secret Alas ! it is a hidden knowledge known to God only None but God knows it I advise you not to make any person the co worker of God Do not spoil the Sunnat of the Holy Prophet Keep these two pillars Keep these two lamps bright You shall be safe from censure and sins if you do not run away from these two lamps Every person has to shoulder these two responsibilities according to his capacity There is less responsibility for foolish persons for your God is Merciful your religion is straight and your Imam is wise I was your friend during the life time of the Holy Prophet Now I am the object of your trials I shall leave you tomorrow which is the day of my death May God bless us ! If we are steadfast in this world we shall succeed but if our feet slip it matters little, for we were under the shadow of branches we were in the direction of winds and we were in the shadow of clouds I was only your neighbour I lived with you for a short time

Now you will find this body deprived of the soul This moving body shall stop moving The tongue shall not speak My character, my condition my silence shall be a warning for you if you understand it The above description of mine shall be a guide for you Now I bid good bye to you You have seen my age I have exposed my secrets and beliefs to you Now you will find my place vacant and then you shall know my worth You shall remember me when others shall succeed me to the Caliphate

---

## HIS SERMON No 152

### About the Future Seditions

Those people have given up the path of truth and adopted the path of ignorance They have left the middle path and have adopted the right and left paths Now do not make haste in inviting the impending danger which is inevitable Tomorrow morning is nearer than today

O my people! This is the age when every promised thing shall take place and you will not be able to recognize it Remember that those who will understand the significance of the progeny of the Prophet shall pass through this dark age with lamps in their hands Others who are pious and holy shall follow them to see their sterling qualities A time will come when he (the true Imam) shall put an end to oppression He shall make people free from tyranny He shall disperse the rebels He shall unite the people They will become wise and clever Their eyes shall become bright by the Quran The explanations of the Quran will be put into their ears When they will have drunk the wine of wisdom they shall bend to the cups containing the wine of learning and guidance

He says in the same sermon —

This victorious party will live for a long time so that they reach the climax of their disgrace and they may deserve the change in their conditions so much so that they shall die The other party shall then be safe from their seditious activities This party bore all hardships with patience for God They never considered their sacrifices rendered in the cause

of God great At last Destiny had its way and the inevitable and unchangeable decree of God was against the rebellious party They took up their eyes upon their spears and due to the advice of their leader they became near to God

When the Holy Prophet died many people became apostates They perished due to the Satan They depended upon the friendship of the misguided persons They left the progeny of the Prophet and helped others They left those whom they were ordered to love The Caliphate was handed over to other person These persons are the mines of sins They are the doors for those who want to enter into the rivers of ignorance They are perplexed and confounded They adopted the way of the Pharos They indulge in worldly pleasures and are indifferent to the punishment of God They are attached with worldly wealth which is perishable and those who are away from the religion are away from the world

---

## HIS SERMON No 153

### On Future Seditions

I invoke the help of God to repulse the Satan and to save me from his tricks and deceptions I testify that Muhammad (Peace be on him) is His servant and His Apostle He is the best of all men None can be compared with him in excellence Before him there were towns which were sunk in darkness and ignorance Tyranny had reached its climax People regarded illegal things to be legal Good and patient people were disgraced and humiliated They were fond of seditions and idol worship But the Holy Prophet removed all these defects and spread light

O Arabs! Consider you are becoming the targets of the arrows of misfortunes Abstain from these worldly pleasures and gains Fear the punishment of God which shall destroy you Be firm in your difficulties Refrain from seditions when they spread out The leader of the rebels shall succeed His army shall be moving (from place to place) This sedition will be on a limited scale in the beginning but later on it shall spread far and wide Its youth will be like the youth of

a child It will be very much destructive These cruel people will make it (Caliphate) hereditary These persons shall indulge in worldly pleasures They will be greedy of this world like dogs But in the very near future (on the day of judgment) they will become the enemies of one another and blame one another

After this sedition there will be another terrible sedition under a new ringleader He will destroy those who run away People will go astray They will be lost in ignorance They will have different aims when the sedition will break out Their plans will be doubtful Those persons who shall fall victims to it shall perish and those who will try to destroy it shall be destroyed There shall be much bloodshed and devastation There will be only a few wise and good people

The tyrants shall succeed This sedition shall cut the inhabitants of the desert into pieces with its axe There shall be much disunion and disunity Those persons who will not cooperate with the seditious people shall perish This sedition will interfere with religious affairs People will be wavering in their faith Wise people will run away from it (sedition), while the ill natured persons will spread it This sedition shall thunder It shall burn It shall hunt people During this period there will be no mercy and no consideration of relation Islam will say Good bye to this age'

He further says in the same sermon —

During this period the Muslims will be either killed and their blood will not be avenged or they shall search for refuge They will be deceived in different ways Do not be the signs of seditions and innovations Turn to God as oppressed ones Do not go to Him as tyrants Refrain from bad and cruel ways Do not eat illegal things The path of the submission and obedience to God has been made easy for you

---

## HIS SERMON No 154

### On God

Praise be to God Whose creation is a proof of His existence He has no beginning which can be proved by His creation He has no equal or peer He is the Wise, the Comprehending



There is a vast difference between the Nourisher and the nourished ones. He is the God the one and only God the unchangeable. He is the Creator but he never begot off spring nor did He get any trouble in creating any one. He hears every voice. He sees every thing. But He does not need any ears to hear or eyes to see. He is Omnipresent but He is not seen by any one. He is hidden but He is expressed. He is the Almighty and All powerful. He who limits His attributes confines Him and he who confines Him falsifies His Ever livingness.

He who asks where He is confines Him to a place. He is the Nourisher of the world and none knows His secrets. He is the Supreme Dispenser of all Grace.

He says in the same sermon —

The bright sun rose. God the Master of the worlds changed the people who were time servers into good persons and bad days into good days for which change we had been as impatiently waiting as the famine stricken people wait for rains. Know it well that the Imams are appointed Caliphs by God. They rule over the people for Him. Only those persons who obey the Imam go into Paradise and these persons who do not obey the Imam go into Hell. Verily God made you Muslims and He wants you to be sincere and honest Muslims. Islam means peace and salvation. God made it (Islam) sublime. God shows His blessings upon it. It has shining torches to remove its darkness. Without the keys of Islam the door of fortune cannot be opened. Without its torches the curtains of ignorance cannot be removed. God has brought it into existence so that people may abstain from prohibitions and follow its commandments. Islam gives salvation to those who seek it.

God gives time to the misguided person. He shall disgrace those who are indifferent to His punishment. They shall go to live with sinful persons if they do not follow the straight path and the truthful Imam.

In the same sermon he says —

God took off the virtues of their sins. They died and went to the next world from which they had turned their faces.

They had to leave the worldly wealth and could not take advantage of it. Every person must think of the next world. He is the wise person who listens to truth and takes warnings from the world. Blessed is he who abstains from the ways of destruction and adopts the straight path. Such a person must not help the misguided and false people.

O Listeners! Be sensible. Shake off your lethargy and give up your ignorance. Make less efforts for worldly gains. Consider on the teachings of the unlettered Prophet. Oppose the person who defies the commandments of the Prophet. Leave the worldly person to his own fate. Do not boast of your blood. Disregard your self and power. Remember your graves. Note that as you will sow, so shall you reap. You shall be rewarded for your good actions which you do here in this world. So you must do good deeds for the next world.

Although a person may follow all the commandments and prohibitions of God strictly and sincerely but they are of little value if he has the following defects. He considers others to be co workers of God. He does not get angry with those things which may be responsible for the destruction of his soul. There are contradictions in his sayings and doings. He introduces innovations in religion to help the needy persons in his needs. He sees people sometimes as friends and sometimes as an enemy. He sees persons with double tongues. (In the presence of a person he praises him, in his absence, he censures him). You should bear these defects in mind.

Remember that the highest aim of beasts is to fill up their stomachs, that of the beasts of prey to bear malice with others, that of the women is to become the objects of decoration of this world and to spread seditions in this world. Verily <sup>1</sup>Momineens are poor, verily Momineens are the best friends, verily Momineens are afraid (of the punishment of God)

### HIS SERMON No 155

#### On the Holy Prophet and the Ahlul Bait

The wise person sees his end with his mental eye. He considers over his ups and downs. A Prophet is calling the

---

(1) Momineens means believers

people to God and a protector is watching over them. Accept the invitation of the Prophet and follow the protector. The tyrants began to swim into the rivers of seditions. They gave up the ways of religion and acted upon innovations. The true Muslims became quiet and the misguided people and liars began to speak. Know it well that we are the true companions of the Holy Prophet. We are the mines of his (Prophet's) secrets. We are the doors of his learning. It is not lawful to enter a house but through its doors. He who disregards this rule is a thief.

He says in the same sermon —

They have supernatural powers of Faith. They are the *mines of the mercies of God*. *Their speeches contain nothing*, but truths. They are quiet not because they are inferior in excellence to others but in their silence lies some mystery. So the leader of the nation should speak truth before the people. He should utilize his wisdom for their reforms. It is necessary for the leader to think of the next world and to lead the people to it. He has wisdom and understanding. He thinks of the pros and cons of an action and then undertakes it if it is useful. He gives it up if it is harmful. A man who does a work without knowing it is like a traveller who does not know the path over which he goes. His ignorance of the path leads him astray from his destination. A man of learning is like a traveller who walks on the straight path which leads him to his destination. If the outward appearance of a thing is good its inside shall also be good but if the outward appearance of a thing is bad its inside shall be bad. This statement is certified by the following tradition of the Holy Prophet. God the Nourisher of the worlds is kind to a man but He hates his past evil actions. He likes his past good deeds but hates his present bad actions. Know it well that nothing can grow without water and water is always different. The tree which is watered with pure water is good and pure and its fruits are also sweet but the tree which is watered with dirty and stinky water is bad and its fruits are sour.

On Bats

All praise be to God Lord of Heaven and Earth Who is above understanding and comprehension He is the Almighty the All Powerful God is Recognized He is Manifest But none can see Him with his physical eyes Even whims (imagination) cannot form an estimate of Him He hath no equal or peer He made everything without consulting any one or taking help from any one His creation attained perfection only through His intention When He desireth to accomplish any matter He hath but to say Be ! and it becometh

## HIS SERMON No 157

### Warning to the Basrites of the impending dangers

Now if a person can resign himself to the Will of God he must do it. If you obey me I shall keep you on the path leading to paradise if God's will be although you shall suffer a lot of difficulties and troubles. That woman is mistaken in her opinion. She is jealous. If the thing which I have got goes to another person and if she is called upon to take it she will not do it. Despite her attitude towards me I respect her and on the Day of Judgment God will call her to account.

He says in the same sermon —

Faith is a bright path and shining torch. Faith, virtues and learning go together. It is due to knowledge that a man is afraid of the punishments after death. The world comes to an end after death. A person turns to the rewards of the next world after death. On the Day of Judgment the Paradise shall be decorated for the pious persons while the fires of hell shall burn for the misguided people. Verily there is no place for the people which may give them refuge from the Day of Reckoning. They are going to that day of great trials and ordeals with great speed.

He says in the same sermon —

Verily people shall come out of their graves and turn to their destination (Heaven or Hell). A house is fixed for every person and he shall not change his place. Verily of the attributes of God there are the Attributes of Commandments and Prohibitions but these two attributes neither bring a man nearer to death nor do they lessen his livelihood. You should rest upon the Book of God for it is a bright light. It shall benefit you and quench your thirst. Those who follow it are free from sins and faults and get salvation. They are on the straight path. If a man reads it very often he does not become old. He who believes in it is truthful. He who acts upon it is destined to go into Paradise. Thereupon a man stood up and asked the <sup>1</sup> Amirul Momineen to inform him of the impending dangers and seditions and he further inquired of him if he had ever asked the Holy Prophet about them.

---

(1) The word Amirul Momineen is an Arabic word means Commander of the Faithful. Here it refers to Ali.

He said that when the following verse was revealed, "Do men think that they will be left alone on saying, we believe, and not be tried?" Part XX Ch 'XXIX' 2 (The Holy Quran)

I knew that in the life time of the Holy Prophet there would be no seditions. When enquiry was made about the sedition from the Holy Prophet, he said, "O Ali, sedition shall overtake my followers in the very near future." Hearing this I said, "O messenger of God! When many Muslims became martyrs on the Day of Ohad and I was prevented from attaining martyrdom, I was very much sad, but you consoled me by saying that I would get martyrdom after your death." The Holy Prophet said, "Of course I said it and so it shall happen. But Ali, how will you have patience then?" I said, "It is not an occasion of patience but it is an occasion of joy and gratitude." He said 'O Ali! after my death my followers shall be greedy of worldly gains. They will consider that God is obliged to them because of their faith. They will want His mercies also. They will consider themselves immune from His anger. They will make illegal things legal on the basis of doubts. They will take wine for grape juice, bribes for presents and interests for sale.' Hearing this I said, "Should they be considered to be seditious Muslims or apostates?" The Holy Prophet said, 'They should be regarded as seditious Muslims.'

---

## HIS SERMON No 158.

### On Time.

All praise be to God Who made praise the key to His remembrance, the cause of His favours and the Guide to His greatness. O People of God! Time treats the present people as it treated the past people. He who died shall never come back and he who lives shall not live here for ever. In the beginning there was nothing, and in the end there shall be nothing. The Day of Judgment is so near to you as if you are in the field of Resurrection. You are driven in the same way as a camel driver drives those camels whose milk is dried up. Now if a person does a work which is not proper for him, then

undoubtedly he is confounded in darkness and he perishes. The Satan made him disobedient and engaged him in bad actions. So Paradise is for those who make haste in doing good actions and Hell is for those who are disobedient.

O People of God! Know it well that piety is a very strong, fortified and respectable fort but corruption is a very bad and mean fort. It can neither save its inhabitants from the punishments of the next world nor can it give protection to any refugee. Remember that piety wipes out sins and with a true and strong faith, a man finds out Heaven.

O People! Be afraid of the pious and holy persons. Verily God, the Master of the Worlds, has shown you the straight and clear path. He has told you what is good and what is bad. Now gather provision for the next world in the remaining days of your life. You have to leave this world (sooner or later). You are like those staying horsemen who do not know when they will get orders to march.

Remember that a person who is created for the next world cannot do anything for this world. He cannot love a thing of which he will soon be deprived.

O People! whatever God has promised must come to pass. There is no temptation (for a wise person) in evils and corruptions from which you are prevented by God. O People! Be afraid of the day when actions shall be judged, when there shall be earth quakes and when even children will become old. O Pious People! Know it well that your conscience protects you. Your limbs watch over you and angels are your protectors. They have counted all your breaths. The utter darkness of night cannot prevent them from seeing you. They can see you even if you live within locked doors. Remember that the Day of Reckoning is at hand. Today will pass and to-morrow shall come. Every one of you is reaching one's destination—that dark ditch. It is a horrible, dreadful and lonely place. Now I see that the sound of the trumpet of Israfil shall reach your ears. The Day of Resurrection has surrounded you. You are coming out of your graves, so that your cases may be decided and truth and falsehood may be separated. Now your inordinate ambitions are gone, and all

your wealth has perished You shall get such orders as you deserve O People of God ! Listen to me Take warnings from the changes of the time and avail yourselves of these opportunities

---

### HIS SERMON No 159

#### Condition of People before and after the War

God created the Holy Prophet Muhammad after a long time from the other Prophet The peoples had been in ignorance for a long time and the commandments and prohibitions of the previous religions were totally disregarded The Holy Prophet was born and brought with him the testimony of the previous books of God He brought with him a light which is called the Quran and which is followed The Holy Quran speaks and I warn you of its commandments Remember that it contains the knowledge of the future the stories of the past people the remedy of your diseases etc

He says in the same sermon —

Then (during the Caliphate of the Umayyads) there will be no house made of mud and no tent made of blanket where the oppressions of the tyrants may not reach These destitute and miserable persons shall get no help You have selected undeserving persons for Caliphate In the very near future God shall punish the oppressors according to their crimes A tyrant shall be made to put on the dress of fear and danger instead of peace and protection His body shall be wounded and bleeding Verily these persons are camels carrying the loads of sins upon their backs

By God ! these Umayyads shall have to give up Caliphate They shall not eat its morsel till the rotation of the Day and the night lasts

---

### HIS SERMON No 160

#### On Himself

I have done my duty to you as your neighbour I have protected you according to my capacity I have freed you from disgrace and oppression for I was grateful to you for your little kindness and I connived at your faults



## HIS SERMON No. 161.

### In Praise of God.

His (God's) orders are orders and they are full of wisdom, His pleasure is protection which is full of mercy. He gives orders with wisdom and pardons people because of His patience. O God! Thou deservest praise for every blessing which Thou conferest or takest. A man should be grateful to God if he recovers from disease or if he falls ill. I praise Thee which Thou likest. I praise Thee so much that it can never be counted. I do not know the zenith of Thy Greatness. I know that Thou art Everything, and Thou never sleepest. None can know or comprehend Thee. But Thou knowest all. Thou art the Almighty and the All powerful. We are surprised to see Thy wonderful creations. We are unable to praise them because they are the manifestations of Thy Greatness. There are so many creations which we can not see, and which are hidden from our eyes. Those things are more important than what we see. If a man thinks with a clear head and a pure heart how Thou madest the Heaven, sky, earth and water etc. he shall be perplexed and confounded.

He says in the same sermon —

A man claims to invoke the Mercy of God but it is false. By God! His actions are not such as deserve mercy. A person who wants rewards and is afraid of punishments does good deeds. It is surprising that a man expects good from God in a great thing but he expects good from wealthy persons in trifling matters. And for these trifling gains he is more obedient and submissive to them than he is to God. He has a very poor opinion about God for he does not pay as much respect and homage to God as he does to wealthy persons. Are you afraid that God shall not be kind to you? If a man is afraid of any person, he is much more obedient to him than he is to God. Such a person considers the fear of a man real and the fear of God unreal. The man who attaches much more importance to this world than to the next world disregards God and becomes a slave of this world. Verily, the example of the Holy Prophet is a sufficient guide for you. He has censured this world and told you the evils and corruptions of this place. So the blessings of this world were not for him.

but they were for his enemies. The Holy Prophet did not enjoy the pleasures of this world nor did he get any share from the decorations and pleasures of this world. Moses (Peace be on him) once said 'O God! I am in need of Thy help'. Prophet Moses asked God only for a loaf of bread for he very often ate only vegetables. If you want, you can follow Moses in this matter. David (Peace be on him) had a very sweet and charming voice. He used to make baskets of the leaves of date palms, sold them and ate one loaf of local made of barley. You can imitate his noble example if you like.

Jesus Christ (Peace be on him) put stone under his head as pillow and ate coarse food. The moon was his lamp at night. The grass which grows for animals was his scent. He had no wife who might allure him. He had no children whose love might make him sad and sorrowful. He had no worldly wealth which might turn him from the next world. He was not greedy which might disgrace him. His legs were his conveyance and his hands were his servants. You can imitate his example if you like.

O foolish person! Follow the example of your own Prophet. He who wants (real) respect must try to follow the Holy Prophet in minutest details. The Holy Prophet ate only little and never attached any importance to this world. He was very lean and thin. He was generally hungry. The world was offered to him but he refused to accept it. He knew that God attached little importance to this world, so he also disregarded it. If we like a thing which God likes, then we disobey the orders of God. The Holy Prophet used to sit on the ground. He repaired his shoes with his own hand. He washed his clothes. He used to ride on naked donkey and one more person sat behind him. Once he saw a curtain hanging on his door upon which pictures were drawn. He asked one of his wives to remove it because it attracted him to the allurements and temptations of this world. He hated the pleasures of this world. He wished not to have any decorations of this world before his eyes, lest they should tempt him and lest he should consider this world to be a place of ease and comfort. He had absolutely no love for this world. He did not like to have a look at the charms of

this world Did the Holy Prophet lead you to the evils of this world? Certainly not He the members of his family and his ardent followers were generally hungry He was so near and dear to God so the world was away from him Now it is the duty of his followers to follow in his foot steps otherwise they shall perish Therefore God calls the Holy Prophet one who gives the good news of Paradise to the people and frightens them of the tortures of the Hell He died when he was hungry and reached Paradise safe and sound He never made any building for himself in this world At last his soul took its flight to the next world

God has done much favour to us because He gave us such a Prophet so that we may follow him By God I have made too many patches in this turban A person told me to throw it away but I asked him to get out of my sight for those who pass their night in ease and comfort praise God in the morning

---

## HIS SERMON No 162

### On the Holy Prophet

God created the Holy Prophet with a bright light a clear faith and a Book His descendants are the best descendants His tree is the best of all trees whose branches are moderate whose fruits are hanging His birth place is Mecca and his place of migration is Madina His fame reached far and wide from this place (Madina) He showed those paths which were not known to the people due to ignorance He removed those innovations which had crept in religion He revealed orders to distinguish between truth and falsehood Now if a person adopts any other religion but Islam his fate is sealed and he is doomed He shall be disgraced and thrown into Hell I trust God and I hope that I shall return to Him I pray to God to show me the straight path which may take me to Paradise O People I advise you to praise and obey God for they shall be the means of salvation on the Day of Judgment and that salvation shall be eternal The Holy Prophet tried his level best to frighten the people of the horrors and tortures of Hell He persuaded the people to obey God He gave you a full description of the

decay and destruction of the world Now abstain from those worldly things which attract you for only a little of the world (shroud) shall go with you after your death This house is very near from the anger of God and very far from the pleasure of God O People! Be away from the sorrows of this world for you believe that you shall be separated from it and that this world is subject to decay and destruction Refrain from this world just as your kind and sympathetic Imam refrains from it and suffers much hardship Take warning because you have seen the graves of the predecessors Their limbs which were joined together are now separated Their eyes and ears are rotten They have lost their names and fame Their prosperity is gone They no longer live with their wives and children They are no longer proud of their children They now do not like to increase their children They do not like to see one another They do not like to help their neighbours O People! Be afraid of God like the man who controls his passions and who has wisdom The commandments and prohibitions of God are well known to you The sign of guidance is fixed The way of salvation is visible The path of God is straight

---

### HIS SERMON No 163

(A person asked Hazrat Ali why he was deprived of Caliphate he deserved it Thereupon he said —)

O brother of the Banu Asad tribe! Verily the belt of your horse is very loose (You have little wisdom) You are going astray, but as your tribe is related with the Prophet you have right to ask such a question You are after knowledge and truth It should be known to you that my family is the best of all and I am very closely related to the Holy Prophet Taking these things into consideration my people deprived me of my right and so we were generous (We did not interfere with the affairs of Caliphate) for on the Day of Judgment God shall distinguish between right and wrong Now look at Ibne Abu Sufiyan Time made me weep and made him laugh But there is nothing surprising in it But I wonder that this Ibne Abu Sufiyan (Muawiyah) is adopting

the crool ed path The enemy wanted to extinguish the light of God with its lamp He stopped the fountain of knowledge from springing He created seditions If these seditions had been stopped I would have put them on the right path

---

## HIS SERMON No 164

### *In Praise of God*

All praise be to God the Creator of the worlds the Most Merciful the Giver of water to high and low grounds He is the beginning and the end the Alpha and Omega the source and the origin In His knowledge are all things concluded and contained People prostrate their faces before Him and praise Him He is above comprehension and understanding It cannot be said how and when He came into existence and how long He will remain He is Manifest but it cannot be said How ? He is hidden but it cannot be said where He is hidden He has no body and no form which may be subject to decay and destruction God the Wise knows what a man thinks what he says and what he sees even in the dark night in the moving moon in the rising and setting of the sun in the changes of time etc He is the beginning and end He is the most exalted and the Most High He cannot be confined to a place He created all things according to His wish He fixed their forms shapes and colours He beautified them There is nothing which can go against His wish nor does He derive any benefit from its submission He knows about the dead as much as about the living ones He knows about those things which are above the skies as much as He knows about them which are hidden under the ground

He says in the same sermon —

O People ! You are made of earth You lived in the dark wombs of mothers for a certain period You could not listen anything there Then you came out from the wombs of your mothers to a place which you had neither seen nor known of its useful paths Now tell me who told you to suck the milk of your mothers ? Who taught you to make water

and pass on refuse ? Verily it is very difficult to understand God. He who cannot understand himself and his conditions cannot understand God. It is impossible for a man to understand God from the attributes of the creation.

---

## HIS SERMON No 165

### Advice to Hazrat Usman

(When there was open opposition to religion during the time of the third Caliph people requested Hazrat Ali to approach the Caliph and explain to him the situation and ask him to do the needful in the matter. He then went to the Caliph and said —)

People are coming behind me. They have sent me as a messenger to you. I do not know what I should tell you. I do not know anything of which you are ignorant. I do not lead you in a matter which you do not know. You know what I know. I do not excel you in any thing of which I may inform you. You have seen what we have seen. We have heard what you have heard. You have been in the company of the Holy Prophet just as we have been. (Hazrat) Ibne Khattab and (Hazrat) Ibne Abi Qahafa are not superior to you in good actions. You are nearer to the Holy Prophet than them because of your relations with him. You are the son in law of the Holy Prophet whereas they were not. Fear God. By God ! You are not blind that your eyesight may be restored and your ignorance may be removed. Verily the path of Truth is clear and straight. The signs of religion are fixed. Know it well that the Just Imam is the best of all men. He must guide the people. He must try to keep up the traditions of the Holy Prophet. He must destroy the innovations in religion. All the traditions of the Holy Prophet are clear and manifest. There are fixed signs for them. The cruel and misguided leader is the worst of all men. People will go astray on account of him. He disregards the path of the Prophet. He may reintroduce the old bad customs. I heard the Holy Prophet saying. The cruel leader will be brought to God on the Day of Reckoning with none to help him and plead for him. He shall be thrown into hell where he

will be much tortured " Fear God and reply Do you want to be murdered as Imam ? The Holy Prophet said, ' The Imam of the Muslims who will open the door of murders till the Day of Resurrection shall be killed He will make every thing (teachings of Islam) doubtful He will be the cause of seditions People will not be able to distinguish between truth and falsehood They will blame each other for these seditions and they will mix together " Now do not be the leader of herd of cattle and flock of sheep for the sake of Marwan who may drive you anywhere he likes during your old age with all your rank and dignity

Hearing this, the Caliph said, "Tell those people to give me so much time that I may get rid of their cruelty and oppression " Hazrat Ali said, "No time is required for the (fair and just distribution of) money which is in the Baitulmal of Madina but as regards the wealth in the Public Treasuries (of other Provinces) you can be allowed so much time that your orders may reach there "

---

## HIS SERMON No. 166.

### On the Peacock.

God made His creations very wonderful whether they are animate beings or inanimate beings, whether they are stationary or moving He showed clear and tangible proofs of His wonderful and great power in creation Wise people admit His Greatness and obey Him They admit His Existence They emphatically prove that there is only one God One of the clear proofs of the Existence of One God is the creation of birds of different forms and shapes They live in big clefts and stationary mountains He made their wings and feathers of different forms which do not resemble one another They obey the orders of their Creator They fly in the big open sky Some of them cannot fly swiftly because they are very big and heavy He has enabled them only to move freely Some of them have different colours The peacock is the most wonderful of all the birds Its colours are very charming and alluring Its tail is very long When it goes to the female peacock, it spreads its tail and keeps it

high to give shade to its better half It looks like the sail of a boat It is very proud of its different colours Its movements are very attractive Its method of sexual intercourse is also very strange and peculiar When it sees its beautiful tails with its charming and attractive colours, it laughs, but when it sees its legs, it is very sad and sorrowful because they are so ugly Its neck is very bright There is only one colour from its neck to its belly It looks as if it is covered with a black sheet Almost all the colours are found in the feathers of the peacock Sometimes its feathers fall off like the leaves of trees, and then it looks quite naked Again those feathers grow up These new feathers have the same colours as the previous ones and grow at the same places Although the peacock has only a few feathers and colours, yet its beauties and charms are beyond description and comprehension How good and Wise God is that even wise men cannot describe the beauties of His creation although the peacock is before them and they see it All praise be to God Who has created fishes, elephants, ants, mosquitos etc He gives them life and death at fixed times

He says in the same sermon in the praise of Heaven —

If you see Paradise with your own eyes, you shall never like to indulge in worldly pleasures You will not love its beauties You will become indifferent to this world if you imagine the trees with soft and hard branches loaded with bunches of sweet and good fruits near the clear and transparent streams in Heaven The people in heaven get these fruits without any labour at their sweet will They shall get pure honey and good wine to drink These heavenly persons shall enjoy eternal respect and blessings They are now in protection O Listeners! You shall die if you really wish to enjoy those pleasures of Heaven You will make haste in going to the graves O God! Make us ardently desire to go to the destination of the good people Heaven is the best example of God's mercy

---

## HIS SERMON No 167.

### On Kindness

Young people should follow the old people and old people should kindly treat the young people Do not be cruel and



merciless like the people before the rise of Islam. They neither received any religious education nor did they get any wisdom and revelation from God. They were like the eggs of obnoxious animals.

He further says —

The Arabs were united but now they are again disunited and they have deserted the true Imam. Some of them will attach themselves to any branch of this tree. In the very near future, the people in general will be united under the flag of the Banu Umayyad like the clouds of the autumn season. God will make them love one another. They will be united like thick clouds. Then they will start like floods. No rock and no mountain in the valley shall be safe. The chains of mountains cannot stop its flood. They will scatter in the plains and usurp the rights of others. By God! The wealth of the Banu Umayyads shall melt like the fat on fire. O People! If you leave no stone unturned in helping your true Imam and in crushing the power of the falsehood, the man who is no better than you and who wants to overcome you shall not succeed in his attempt. But Alas! You are going astray like the Israelites. After my death your ignorance shall be considerably increased. You have disregarded truth. You have left my cause and taken up the cause of Umayyads. Know it well that if you had followed me I would have taken you to the path of the Prophet. I would have saved you from going astray and you would have thrown away your heavy load (the following of falsehood).

---

### HIS SERMON No 168

(Delivered during the time of the first Caliph)

Verily God sent a Book to guide the people. Distinctions between right and wrong, truth and falsehood are made in it. If you adopt the path of safety, you shall get guidance. Turn your faces from evils. Follow the Commandments of God and you shall go into Paradise. God has ordained some things to be legal and some things to be illegal. God has ordained that a Muslim should be respected. A true Muslim is he from whose hand and tongue other Muslims are safe, but

he is allowed to speak out the truth even if any Muslim is harmed God did not make it legal to harm any Muslim Make haste to meet death which is inevitable and unavoidable The persons who are dead are your leaders and fore runners The Day of Resurrection is driving you from behind Cut off your relations with the world and meet with those persons who are dead Your first is waiting for your last

---

### HIS SERMON No 169.

(When the people took the oath of allegiance to Hazrat Ali, some persons approached and requested him to action against the murderers of Hazrat Usman, he said —)

O Brethren! I am not ignorant of what you know, but how can I take revenge upon them (the opposition party) because they are so strong They overcome us, we do not overcome them Beware! these are the people with whom even your slaves are making agitation The Arabs of the Desert are cooperating with them They are amongst you and they trouble you in any way they like Are you strong enough to take revenge upon them? Verily what you want is the work of the people before the rise of Islam Many people are ready to take up their cause Moreover, people have diverse opinions regarding this matter One party considers it to be right and just like you The Second party holds just the reverse view regarding this matter There is a third which is neutral in this matter Now you should have patience and let the people arrive at some definite conclusions, then it shall be easy to see to this matter Time shall show you that you will be satisfied with my decision Do not do anything which may shatter your powers and which may disgrace you Very soon I shall settle this matter, but if it is not satisfactorily solved then it shall result in bloodshed

---

### HIS SERMON No. 170

(When the party of Jamal started for Basra, Hazrat Ali said —)

God created the Holy Prophet with the Book and Faith He who does not go against this Book is not destroyed Verily Satanic ways and innovations shall lead to destruction,

but he whom God preserves is not destroyed. Verily if you follow the true Imam, your religion is safe. Obey his orders sincerely and implicitly. By God! Either follow the true Caliph or God will hand over the kingdom of your religion to another person. The Caliphate shall go into the hands of your enemy. Remember that these persons, being angry with my Caliphate, have gathered together. I shall have patience till I see that your party is harmed. But if they insist upon their wrong decision and they are obstinate, the Muslims shall suffer and there shall be bloodshed. God has conferred upon me this Caliphate and they are jealous of me for it. These persons are disregarding the commandments of God. It is now incumbent upon you to follow the Book of God, the traditions of the Holy Prophet and me. Follow the instructions of the Holy Prophet and make his religion (Islam) exalted and sublime.

---

### HIS SERMON No 171.

(When Hazrat Ali reached near Basra, the inhabitants of Basra sent a messenger to enquire of him whether he was justified in fighting against Hazrat Ayesha. He convinced the messenger that he was perfectly justified in fighting against her and said —)

Now you should follow the truth. He said, "I am but the messenger of a people. I cannot tell you anything unless I reach them." The Amirul Momineen said, "Those persons who are left behind and have sent you to find out a place where there is water are informed by you of a place where there is water as well as fresh grass. What will you do if they oppose you and turn to a place where there is no water?" He said, "I shall leave their company and oppose them. I shall go back to the place where there is water as well as fresh grass." Hearing this the Amirul Momineen said, "Now stretch your hand for allegiance." He said, "By God! In the face of your convincing arguments there is no alternative for me but to swear allegiance to you." So saying he took the oath of allegiance to Hazrat Ali. His name was Kaleeb i Jarami.

## HIS SERMON No 172

(It was delivered before the Battle of Siffin)

O God ! the Creator of the Earth and the Sky ! Thou hast made the Sun, the moon and the stars Thou hast created the angels who are never tired of prayers O Nourisher of this world ! Thou hast made this earth the resting place for insects beasts and animals Thou hast made mountains which are the supporters of this earth and which contain mines If Thou makest us victorious over our enemies keep us away from tyranny and keep us firm on the straight path and if Thou makest them victorious over us, conferest upon us the dress of martyrdom and savest us from their tyranny and oppression Where are those defenders of Islam which checked others from blaming people and who bore hardships patiently Look here ! Now disgrace is behind you and Heaven is in front of you

---

## HIS SERMON No 173

On Jamal

All praise be to God whose knowledge of the present sly cannot prevent Him from the knowledge of the other sly and whose knowledge of this earth can not prevent Him from the knowledge of the other earth A person said to me O Ibne Abi Talib ! You are very greedy of this Caliphate I said ' No but you are more greedy of it than I am More over you are so far away from Caliphate and I am so near from it I have demanded my right You stand between me and my right You want to frustrate the realization of my aim '

When I explained to him the situation fully before all the people he was confounded and could not refute my arguments O God ! I invoke Thy help from the revenge of the Quraysh and their helpers They disregarded my rights They disgraced and humiliated me and now they gather together to fight against me for a thing which was only my right They

also say, "You are justified in claiming Caliphate It is also incumbent upon you to give up this right "

He says in the same sermon about the people of Jamal —

They came out of their houses and dragged the wife of the Holy Prophet like slave girls at the time of selling They took her to Basra Those two persons (Talha and Zubair) left their wives in their houses and brought out the wife of the Prophet which was very much undesirable They took her to an army of which every member had taken the oath of allegiance to me and obeyed me They attacked my officials in Basra and surrounded the people and the Baitulmal They killed some people with cruelty and others with treachery By God ! They killed as many Muslims as they had brought with them for attacking my party

---

## HIS SERMON No 174

### On Caliphate

Muhammad (Peace be on him) is the trustee of the revelations of God He is the last of all the Prophets He gives the good news of the Mercy of God and frightens the people of His punishments O People ! He who is the most powerful of all and who knows the Book of God best of all deserves this Caliphate Now if any person creates sedition, first I will try to dissuade him from it , but if he does not abstain from it, I shall fight against him By God ! the question of Caliphate can not be settled unless all the people are present and unanimous over it , but the persons deciding the question of Caliphate plead for him also who is absent Now neither the present person can go against his word nor can the absent person adopt any other way Beware ! I will fight against two persons The first person is he who claims Caliphate although he does not deserve it The second is he who abstains from doing those things which are incumbent upon him to do I advise you to fear God This is the best piece of advice for people Its ultimate result will be very good Now the door of battle has opened between you and the

tribesmen Only he who has wisdom and patience and who knows the true path can take up this flag Now follow the path which you are ordered to follow and keep yourselves aloof from the prohibited path Do not make haste in this matter unless you get positive or negative orders from your true Imam Beware! You love this world but the world gets angry with you This world is neither your home nor destination and God has not created you for this world Remember that you will neither live in this world for ever nor will this world remain for you for ever This world deceives you I have warned you of the dangers of this world Do not be deceived by it Do not be greedy of it Obey God and have patience Protect those things which you are ordained to protect Invoke God to bestow His blessings upon you Remember that if you strictly observe the pillars of Islam you shall not be harmed in any way if you lose any worldly thing Remember that if you lose your faith nothing of this world which you have gained shall benefit you O God! keep us on the right path and enable us to have patience and to be grateful to Thee

---

## HIS SERMON No 175

### On Talha and Hazrat Usman

Why did Talha Ibne Obaidullah demand the revenge of the murder of Hazrat Usman?

I was not frightened of war I was not afraid of spear and sword God has promised me help and victory and I have full faith in it By God! Talha would not have taken out his sword from its sheath to demand blood for Hazrat Usman's murder if he had not been afraid of being taken to task for taking part in this murder, for he was more intent of his (Hazrat Usman's) murder than any other member of his party So he has adopted this tactics to save himself by keeping the people in doubt By God! Talha did nothing of the following things According to Talha if Ibne Affan was a tyrant, he would have helped his murderers or he would have been the enemy of his (Hazrat Usman's) helpers, but he did

not do this If he (Hazrat U-man) had been oppressed it would have been his duty to help him and plead for him, but he did not do this If he had considered both of them to be doubtful, he ought to have retired (from politics), but he did not do this Now he has brought forward a problem in which his arguments are unacceptable

---

### HIS SERMON No. 176.

#### On Indifferent People.

O People ! You are indifferent to the next world Your actions have not been forgotten God shall take you to task for disregarding His commandments and prohibitions How can I see you going astray from God and feeling inclined to the Satan ? You are like sheep which the shepherd has driven to a pasture and water place producing epidemics These sheep are such as are given fodder only to be killed, but they themselves are unaware of it When they are treated kindly, they are under the impression that they will be treated in the same way throughout their whole life By God ! If I wish, I can tell them everything about them as regards their origin, their destination etc I must have done it but I am afraid lest they should take me for the Prophet of God Beware ! I have informed my sincere friends of all these things as they are safe from apostacy By God ! I tell you nothing but truth Verily the Holy Prophet has told me all about these things He has told me that a certain person shall perish here and a certain person shall get salvation there He has told me about the fate of this Caliphate He has told me everything which will happen to me O People ! I did not persuade you to obey any commandments of God unless I obeyed it first, and I did not prevent you from any sin unless I myself abstained from it

---

### HIS SERMON No. 177.

#### On God, the Holy Prophet and the Innovation in Religion.

O People ! Derive benefits from the statements of God. Listen to His advice God has told you what He likes and

what He does not like. You should obey His commandments and abstain from His prohibitions. The Holy Prophet said, "Due to abstaining from prohibitions a man goes into Paradise and due to base desires he goes into hell." A man takes pleasures in sins and finds it difficult to refrain from them and obey God. May God have mercy on the person who puts an end to his low desires and avarice, for a man always falls a victim to sins because of his avaricious nature. O People! Believe that every morning and evening a Muslim finds faults with himself and blames him. He always seeks good for himself. Try to imitate the examples of those persons who lived and died before your eyes and upon whom God bestowed His favours. They have left this world for good. The Holy Quran is an instructor which has not the least touch of misappropriation. It is a guide which never misguides any person. It is a messenger that never tells lies. If a man reads the Holy Quran, he will either gain something or lose something. The gain is due to guidance and loss is due to blindness. Remember that after receiving the knowledge of the Quran, a man requires no other knowledge, and if a man has not learnt the Holy Quran, his knowledge is incomplete. Seek guidance and help from the Holy Quran. It contains the remedy of the worst diseases. What are those fatal diseases? They are Heathenism, Enmity, Ignorance, Misguidance etc. Invoke the help of God through the Holy Quran but never take help from the people through this Book, for the Holy Quran guides a man to turn to God and not to turn to the people for help. Remember that the intercession of the Holy Quran is unfailing and sure. On the Day of Judgment the recommendation of the Book of God shall be accepted positively. And if the Quran exposes the ignorance and folly of a person on the Day of Reckoning, his fate shall be sealed and he shall be doomed. On the Day of Resurrection a person will say, 'Beware!' Every agriculturist is busy in rendering an account of his agriculture but the agriculture of the Quran is an exemption to it." Be the farmer of this Quran and follow it. Take instructions from it. O People! Do good deeds and think of your future. Search for Truth. Have patience. Be pious. You have an ideal. Try to achieve it. Islam has an aim. Turn to attain it. Do your duties which God has imposed on you. Be grateful to Him.



for his blessings and favours On the Day of Judgment, I shall be a witness for you Remember that whatever was fated came to pass Verily I shall speak according to the promise of God and the Holy Quran

“(As for) those who say, our Lord is Allah, then continue in the right way, the angels descend upon them, saying — Fear not, nor be grieved, and receive good news of the garden which were promised The Holy Quran Part XXIV Ch XLI 30

Now you also say that your Nourisher is God Then you must follow the Book of God, obey His orders and offer your prayers Do not go astray Do not introduce innovations in religion On the Day of Reckoning the tyrants shall not realize their aim So do not spoil and degrade your character Always speak the truth It is unnecessary for a man to take care of his tongue By God! the piety of a man does not benefit him unless he controls his tongue Remember that the tongue of a Momin is behind his heart while the heart of a hypocrite is behind his tongue When a Momin wants to talk to any person, he first thinks of the pros and cons of his talk, if it is good, he speaks, but if it is bad he keeps quiet Contrary to this, a hypocrite speaks out everything, good or bad, unmindful of its consequences The Holy Prophet says “The faith of a man is not firm and strong unless his heart is strong and the heart can not be strong unless he speaks the truth O People! Know it well that a Momin considers a thing which was lawful last year to be lawful this year, and a thing which was illegal last year to be illegal this year Now people have introduced innovations in religion Owing to these innovations those things which were illegal cannot be legal for you Remember that the thing which God has made legal is legal and the thing which God has made illegal is illegal Now you know the state of affairs thoroughly well Take lessons from the examples of your predecessors You are invited to Islam Only those persons who are deaf and blind cannot follow it If a man cannot take lessons from his past experiences and misfortunes, pieces of advice are of little avail to him Remember that there are two kinds of men—(1) followers of Holy Prophet (2) those persons who introduce innovations in religion but they cannot give tangible

proofs in support of their innovations from the Holy Quran or the Traditions of the Holy Prophet. Verily the Quran is the best guide for a man. It is very peaceful. Disappointed and despondent persons find consolation in it. It is the fountain of knowledge. It can cleanse the heart. But alas! those who understand its significance and those who acted upon it died. Only those persons who have forgotten it or try to forget it deliberately are alive. So if you see any person doing good deeds help him and if you see any wicked person playing mischief avoid him for the Holy Prophet has said 'O Son of Adam! Do good deeds. Give up seditious activities and you will be a good man following the middle path. Beware! There are three kinds of tyranny —(1) the tyranny which shall never be pardoned (2) The tyranny for which punishment shall be given (3) The tyranny which shall be pardoned. Now the tyranny which shall not be excused is the association of any one with God.

Surely Allah does not forgive that anything should be associated with Him. Quran Part V Ch iv 48. The tyranny which is pardonable is the tyranny which a man does to himself under certain circumstances. The tyranny which punishment will be given for is the tyranny which a person does to other person. The punishment of God is very severe. The worldly punishment is of little importance as compared with the punishment of the next world. Do not be hypocrite. Blessed is the man who finds fault with himself and does not see the faults of others. Blessed is he also who is a man of retired habits. He eats whatever he gets and is grateful to God. He prays to God. He weeps over his sins. He is busy in some work for himself. People live in ease and comfort due to him.

---

## HIS SERMON No 178

### On the Decision of the Arbitration

Your chiefs have decided to select one person from each party. Accordingly the selection has been made and we have taken promise from them (Amr ul As and Abu Musa Ashari) that they must decide this matter according to the ^ ^

is obeyed implicitly by mean tyrants without any rewards and favours? I invite you, who are Muslims and sons of worthy fathers, to rewards and favours but you do not listen to me and oppose me. You refuse to obey whatever orders I give you. Remember that I like Death best of all things. I taught you the Book of God. I explained to you everything with tangible proofs. I made you recognize what you refused to believe and of which you were ignorant. I made you drink the wine of the cognizance of God which was far away from your lips. Would that the blind person could see and the sleeping man could rise and see that the people who follow Muawiyah and Ibne Nabgha (Amr-ul bin As) are sadly misguided and mistaken.

---

### HIS SERMON No. 182

#### On the Rebellious Kufian Regiment.

(Hazrat Ali sent a messenger to find out the conditions of a Kufian regiment which intended to join the Kharijites) When the messenger returned, Hazrat Ali said, "Have they (the soldiers of the regiment) pitched their tents here in peace or have they gone away in fear?" He said, "O Amirul Momineen all of them have gone away." Thereupon the Amirul Momineen said —May God keep them away from His mercy like the people of Samood. Remember that if they had been attacked with spears and swords, they would have been ashamed at their conduct. Verily the Satan defeated and disunited them. On the Day of Judgment he will be tired of them and they will keep themselves aloof from him. Now they are excluded from guidance. They have become the victims of ignorance and blindness. They have become disobedient and rebellious due to their ignorance.

---

### HIS SERMON No. 183.

#### On Praise of God.

All praise be to God to Whom all shall return. I praise Him for His great favours and blessings. This praise brings

us near to God It is the cause of His further favours I invoke the help of God I seek favours from Him I trust in God for saving me from the hardships of this world I obey Him in thought, words and actions I turn to Him in good faith I sincerely believe in one God I respect Him for His greatness I seek protection from Him He never begot off spring, nor was of any other born or begotten To Him can none other ever be likened He is the beginning and the end, the Alpha and Omega, the source and the origin In His knowledge are all things concluded and contained He never suffers any loss God is known through His creation The birth and death of a person is a tangible proof of the Existence of God He hath made the sky without any support and pillar God ordered it to become and it came into existence at once without any delay It obeyed the orders of God implicitly and therefore God made it so exalted and high Due to this unflinching and implicit obedience He made it the dwelling place of angels He studded the sky with bright stars to guide the perplexed and confounded travellers on dark nights God is so good and great He knoweth dark night prevailing over plains and mountains, the thunder and lightening which accompany rains, the leaves which fall on the ground and which are scattered due to gale and rain He knows whence and where the rain falls He knows the movement of the ant He knows how much food a mosquito needs He knows whether a pregnant woman has a male or female child in her womb All praise be to God who is the beginning and the end and who is above comprehension and understanding One work cannot prevent Him from other work His Generosity, however much it may be, cannot diminish the treasures of His powers He doth not see with physical eyes He cannot be confined to a place He cannot have sexual intercourse with any woman He doth not create any one with any instrument He had a talk with the Prophet Mohommad (Peace of God be on him) but not with His tongue O People! If you are really earnest and sincere to undergo any suffering for the cognizance of God, then see (Hazrat) Gabriel and Mikaeel and other great angels, who constantly pray to God sincerely and earnestly and obey His commands implicitly, but they are also at a loss to understand the mysteries of the Great Creator Remember that a

thing which has form and body can be understood through wisdom or a person who is subject to death can be known but God has no form and no body Verily there is no god but God He made darkness bright by His light and vice versa O People! I advise you to fear God Who hath bestowed so many blessings upon you who hath given you livelihood Listen to me If any person could have the means to live in this world for ever and could have escaped death he would have been (Prophet) Solomon the son of David (Peace of God be on them) who was a great Prophet and men and angels were made his subordinates but even he had to submit to inevitable and unavoidable death after the expiry of his life Other nation occupied his empire Verily you can get warnings from the past history Where are the Amalgas and the Pharoas? Where are the inhabitants of Rus who used to kill Prophets extinguish the light kindled by the messengers of God and establish the traditions of the tyrants? Where are those kings who used to attack with big armies and defeat the big forces of their foes who collected many armies and founded many cities?

O People! I gave you pieces of advice and instructions which Prophets used to give to their followers I discharged my duties as a wasi I gave you advice but you would not listen to it I drove you to truth by various means but you would not follow me O People! Do you expect any other Imam but me? Remember that the Muslims acquired worldly powers because they obeyed the orders of the Holy Prophet but now they have gone astray and they are misguided because they do not follow the true Imam so that they may achieve worldly powers by honest and fair means Good persons have made up their minds to die, but the bad persons have sold the permanent blessings of next world for the temporary pleasures of this world We deeply regret the loss of our brethren who were killed in the Battle of Siffin but they were fortunate because they are free from the present sufferings By God! They met God God rewarded them highly and gave them protection Where are those friends of mine who fought for me and died? Where are Ammar Ibne Taihan and Khazima? Where are those who were determined to fight and die in the cause of God and whose heads were taken to the cruel and sinful Syrians?

The narrator says that Hazrat Ali thereupon wept for a long time and said —

Alas! They were the brethren of my Religion They regularly read the Holy Qur'an and understood its spirit They reflected over the commandments of God and acted upon them They revived the traditions of the Holy Prophet They removed innovations in religion When they were invited to Jihad, they responded to the call gladly. They had full confidence in their leader and obeyed his orders implicitly.

Then he said very loudly —

Aljihad (religious war)! Aljihad (religious war)! O People! Beware! Today I am organizing an army Now those of you who want to fight for God should come out

(Nauf, the narrator, says —

Hazrat Ali placed ten thousand soldiers under the command of Hazrat Imam Husain, Qais Ibne Saad, Abu Ayyub Ansari The rest army was placed under the command of other generals Their different forces were about to march for Siffin when Hazrat Ali was murdered by Ibne Majam So the soldiers dispersed )

---

## HIS SERMON No. 184

### On Greatness of God.

All praise be to God Who is recognized without being seen, Who createth without any trouble, Who made the creation with His great power, Who made masters to frighten the people of His great powers, Who is the Chief of all the chiefs God made His creation live in this world He sent His Prophets to the people to tell them the secrets of this world, to frighten them of the evils of this place, to give them warnings from the examples of the past people They were also to tell them the lawful and unlawful things, those things which were meant for His obedient people and those things

which were meant for His disobedient people I praise God and turn to Him just as He bestoweth His blessings upon the people and turn to them for receiving gratitude and thanks He determined, fixed and limited every thing in which absolutely no change is possible

He further says about the Holy Quran —

The Holy Quran commands to do legal things and prohibits from illegal things It is silent (because it has no tongue) It speaks (because it contains irrefutable arguments) It is the proof of God for the people They have made promise to God God made the Quran complete He exalted this religion through this Book The Holy Prophet died when He had given the message of God to the people Now remember God with those attributes with which He mentions Himself in His Book He hath given a full description of His likes and dislikes in His Book He hath given a clear indication and sign for every thing The Quran checks the people from evils and invites them to do good deeds with which God is pleased Absolutely no change is possible in His commandments and prohibitions Remember that if you do the things which existed before you and which God did not like He would not be pleased with you, and if you act upon those things which existed before you and which God liked He would never be displeased with you Verily you apparently follow in the footsteps of the Holy Prophet and you are talking like the people who lived before you Verily the blessings of God are sufficient for you in this world It is incumbent on you to be grateful to God He hath advised you to be pious and holy He hath ordained piety to be the highest aim of His creation Now fear God before Whom you stand and Who keeps you under His control He is the Master and Maker of your destiny He knoweth your faith even if you keep it hidden He hath written your actions if you do them openly Listen! He hath appointed angels to write down your actions, good or bad but they do not write any thing wrongly and incorrectly

Remember that he who fears God shall be safe from seditions and he shall receive guidance even in darkness He shall get refuge and protection in a place which is meant

for angels, prophets and other good and pious people Now be ready for the next world Try to die before your deaths, for very soon Death shall overtake the people and the door of repentance shall be closed You are travellers Be ready to depart from this world which is not your real home You are given orders for departure and you are given time to make provision for your journey Remember that your soft skins cannot bear the fires and tortures of Hell Have mercies on you You have seen people undergoing the hardships of this world You have seen persons crying and weeping in pain and anguish A man staggers when any limb of his body bleeds A person badly feels the effect of the burning sand Just imagine the condition of the person who will be thrown into the fire of Hell and who will have to live with the Satan O aged people! What will be your condition when fire will burn you from all sides? O People! Fear God! Fear God! Now you are stout, strong and healthy and you have everything at your disposal Try to untie your knots before they become tight and strong Open your eyes (Pray to God at night) Keep fasts Do good deeds Give your wealth in charity Suffer pains in this world for the pleasures of the next world Never be miserly in doing good deeds God says —“O You who believe! if you help (the cause of) Allah, He will help you and make firm your feet” The Holy Quran Part XXV Ch XL VII 7

Listen! God doth not want your help because He is Helpless He doth not borrow money from you because His treasures are empty He demands help from you although He is the Master of the earth and sky He is All Mighty and the All Powerful He wants debts from you although the treasures of the earth and the sky are under His control He is self sufficient He simply tries you to see which of you do good deeds Now make haste in doing good deeds and live in paradise in the company of good people The people of paradise are the friends of the Prophets Angels go there to see them They never hear frightful and dreadful sounds of Hell They do not in any way suffer there ‘He gives it to whom He pleases, and Allah is the Lord of mighty grace’ The Holy Quran Part XXVII Ch L VII 21



I have discharged my duties Now it is your duty to act upon my advice or not God is sufficient for us He is the Master of all

---

## HIS SERMON No 185

### On Burj Ibn Mushir Tai

(Burj Ibn Mus hir Tai was a Kharijite and poet Once he said There is no order but the order of God Hazrat Ali heard it and said —)

O Asram ! (Asram is a person whose front teeth are broken) Keep quiet May God deface you ! By God ! The true Imam appeared You were in his army in disgrace and unknown None liked to listen to you Now the chief of the rebels (Muawiyah) shouted and you came out like the horns of a goat

---

## HIS SERMON No 186

### On Praise of God

All praise be to God Who is above comprehension and understanding and who is finite and limitless Eyes cannot see Him Ignorance cannot hide Him He is the beginning The creation is a clear and tangible proof of His existence The resemblance of the creation proves that God hath no equal or peer God's promises are true He oppresses human beings which shows His greatness but He is not cruel over weak people He is Just All His creation is subject to decay and destruction which proves His Great Powers He is one but not according to number He is the beginning and

and body. He is Great because of His rank. His empire is very vast and far flung. I testify that Muhammad (Peace be on him) is His servant and His Apostle. God is pleased with him and his descendants. He sent him with tangible proofs to show the people His path. The Holy Prophet gave the message of God to the people and gave them guidance and brought them on the way to salvation. He showed them the Camp posts of salvation. He made the pillars of Islam very strong.

In the same sermon he says on the creation of animals —

If people see His great blessings with a critical eye they shall come to the straight path and they shall be frightened of the burning fires of Hell. But alas! the hearts are sick and the eyes are bad. They do not see His small creatures. God created them and made them strong. He gave them ears, eyes, bones and skins. People should reflect over the small body of the ant and see how it moves, picks up its livelihood and carries and stores the red wheat in its hole. It gathers food for winter in the summer season. God has given it livelihood according to its needs. The Merciful and kind God takes care of it whenever it may be whether on smooth and dry stone or steepy stone. If you reflect over its body, eyes and other limbs you will call it a wonderful creation of God. You cannot help praising God. God is Exalted and High who made the ant. There is no co-worker of God in His creation. None has helped Him in His work. If you reflect over the creation of God you shall arrive at the conclusion that the Creator of the ant is the same as the Creator of trees. There are so many kinds of inanimate things and there are so many differences in animate objects. But the creation of any object, animate or inanimate, big or small matters little to God. Reflect over the creation of the sun, moon, grass, trees, water, stone, the relation of day and night, the flowing of rivers, the numerous mountains, the long ranges of the tops of mountains, differences in languages etc. It is a pity for a man to deny his Creator. The atheists believe that they are born like grass. None has created them but they do not offer any proof for it. Moreover they do not consider over the revision of their opinions. Can anything grow without water? Can any murder take place without the

murderer? Consider over the creation of the locust Remember the day when God made its two red eyes ears mouth two teeth with which it cuts grass and plants The farmers are afraid of it but they cannot prevent it from destroying their fields It goes to their fields and satisfies its hunger there, although it is so small

Blessed is the man who prostrates his face before God who is humble before Him and obeys Him who is afraid of His anger The birds of the air are under His control He hath counted every feather and breadth of these birds He hath fixed their livelihood He hath created the crow, hawk, pigeon ostrich and other birds with a certain name and sign He is responsible for their livelihood He made the thick clouds which rain constantly He allotted rains to every place He refreshed the ground when it was quite dry and barren He grew vegetation when every thing had disappeared

---

### HIS SERMON No. 187.

#### On Oneness of God

He is the transcendent God, independent of time and space and untouched by and inaccessible to the troubles and disturbances incident to the ephemeral world in which we live God is inaccessible to the understanding and essentially incomparable to anything whatever, having no analogy in any thing within our experience God is not even to be thought of as spirit, spirit being itself an effect of His will He is the conscious creator of all and is free from any control by that which He has made or entanglement with His own work, which He moulds to perfection through His imminent presence in it He transforms every thing by a continual process of evolution His action extends into and has effect on all things It is God Who causes the seeds of corn to germinate, and Who decrees life and death He is the great Being inseparable from existence Who sees, hears and controls everything

God, the one and only source of existence and of power, is at the beginning and end, on the surface and at the origin,

of all things He is the beginning and the end, the Alpha and Omega, the source and the origin. In His knowledge are all things concluded and contained. He is the supreme Creator, not only of man, but also of what man himself accomplishes. When He desireth to accomplish any matter He hath but to say "Be!" and it becometh. He is the immanent Divinity Who is present as intervener in all parts of the universe and Whose will is immutable and eternal. He cannot be seen by our eyes, yet He Himself is aware of every yearning regard of ours. He is the infinitely subtle and implacable, the vast imponderable which at once embraces and intellectually comprehends all existence. This God, Omnipotent in His will, Omnipresent in His work and immanent in the organic relations of existence inherent in the process of evolution, is also the Absolute, the Infinite, and the *Immutable*.

We recognize in God the Supreme Being, One and indivisible, the source and origin of all existence, but we can not say *what in fact He is, nor how He works, since He is not like any thing of which we have knowledge, nor can He be compared to anything in our experience.* It is by no means easy to conceive how the passage of immutable and abstract Being into Becoming, which is both concrete and in continual movement, can take place. He is the God, the One and only, God the unchangeable, Who never begot offspring, nor was of any other born or begotten. To Him can none other ever be likened. He hath no equal or peer.

The changes of day and night can not make Him old. Light and darkness cannot change Him. He has no body and no form. He is independent and not dependent upon any thing. He is not supported by any thing. He talks though He has no tongue. He hears though He has no ears. He sees though He has no eyes. He accomplishes every thing without premeditation and reflection. He loves a person though He has no soft heart. He hates a person though He has no grudge against him. He created everything without taking help from any one. He made this earth without any foundation. He fixed mountains upon it. He made running streams. He did not feel tired when He created

these things He did not become weak by making His creation strong He is the Almighty and the All Powerful He is the nourisher of all They prostrate their faces on the earth before Him They are quite helpless before Him None can escape His notice He has no peer or equal Though He created life, it is also true that He decrees death Though He brought paradise and eternal beauty into existence He also created the lake of fire and eternal suffering There is no wonder in these apparent contradictions for He is the All-powerful If all His creations (animals, beasts, birds) whether they are dead or alive gather together and want to make a mosquito, they cannot make it They cannot even think of making it They shall be perplexed and confounded They shall confess their helplessness Verily God will destroy everything one day After the destruction and annihilation of this world, there shall be nothing as there was nothing before its creation Only God shall exist and all shall turn to Him When God wanted to create, none could defy Him, and when He would destroy His creation, none would be able to prevent Him from doing it He created this world neither to strengthen His empire nor to take their help against any powerful enemy He created it not because He felt solitude and loneliness He shall destroy this world after its perfection but not because that He will be fed up with it God was kind enough to create this world which gradually attained its zenith He made it strong and powerful After a certain period He shall destroy it and reward or punish His creation according to their actions, good or bad which they have done during the course of their life in this world There shall be no life in the next world until and unless this world perishes He shall do it but not because that He wants any help from them there He is the Self sufficient, the All Powerful, the Absolute, the Infinite, the Immutable, the Ever living He is the supreme Dispenser of all Grace. Verily God is the Gentle, the Indulgent to His creatures

---

### HIS SERMON No. 188.

#### An Advice to his Companions

Beware! may my parents be sacrificed for these few supporters of mine! They are famous over the sky but they

are unknown in this world. Remember that misfortune shall overtake you. Secular and ecclesiastical good shall come to an end. Wait for the rule of the mean and base people. These things shall happen when it will be very difficult for a Momin to earn even one dirham lawfully and when the recipient of a reward shall be valued more than the giver of the reward for in those days rewards and prizes will be given due to sedition and hypocrisy. These events shall take place when you will indulge in pleasures and wine drinking when you will take the oath of God without rhyme or reason. You will tell lies for nothing when misfortunes shall surround you. But how far off are these bad days?

O People! Throw off the burdens which you carry on your backs. Do not be disunited in obeying the orders of your Caliph lest you should be blamed and censured for your actions. Extinguish the burning fire of sedition to which you are going. Keep yourselves aloof from this path of burning fire. Give up your idea of seditious activities. By God! He who is a true Momin shall be burnt to ashes in this fire of sedition and he who is not a Momin shall be quite immune from it. Amongst you I am like a lamp in darkness. He who comes in this darkness derives benefit from this light. O People! Listen! Remember my advice. Pay heed to what I say so that you may understand the significance of my instructions.

Why are you greedy of a thing which shall leave you ? You have seen those persons who were taken to graves in such a way as if they were never born for this world but they were born to live in the next world for ever

Those persons who lived in this world had to leave it and make graves their dwelling places They were afraid of graves but they had to live there They had to give up the pleasures of this world for which they had given up the idea of the next world Now they are quite helpless They can neither get rid of the evils which they have done nor can they now do any good deeds They loved this world but it deceived them They trusted it but it was treacherous May God have mercy on you ! Think of your destination You are persuaded to reach it You are invited to it Obey the commandments of God and abstain from His prohibitions Have patience Invoke the blessings of God for tomorrow is very near from today Hours days months and years are passing away very swiftly Life itself is passing very fast

---

## HIS SERMON No. 190

### On Kinds of Faith.

There are two kinds of faith (1) Strong and firm faith (2) Weak and vacillating faith Do not blame a man for his weak faith Wait and see him till his death and then form opinion about him (Call no man happy or unhappy, good or bad till you have seen his end) Just as migration from one's home to another place was obligatory in the cause of God during the time of Holy Prophet, so it is now God does not

are trustees (Amins) and who are honest listen to us and only wise persons remember our pieces of advice O People! Ask me what ever you want before I die for verily I know the paths over the sky better than the paths of this world Ask me whatever you like before seditions spread out and people lose their senses

---

## HIS SERMON No 191

### On Piety

I thank God for His blessings and I praise Him I seek His help to do the duties which He hath imposed upon me I invoke only His help because He is the master of the angels, and His empire is far flung I testify that Muhammad (Peace be on him and his descendants) is His servant and His Apostle He invited the people to God He fought against the enemies of God and defeated them People gathered together to falsify him and extinguish the light which he had kindled but despite their opposition the Prophet continued to do his missionary work Be pious for piety is a very strong rope and it is very exalted and noble Think of the sufferings of death and do good deeds Be ready to die before it comes Death is a warning for wise persons but ignorant people take no heed of it You shall see the Day of Resurrection after passing through the dark and narrow graves and intolerable and unbearable sufferings of the graves O People! Fear God! Fear God! Verily the world is driving you to the Day of Reckoning You and the Day of Judgment are tied with a rope That day is at hand The world has cut off its connections with the people of this world root and branch It has made the people stand in a very narrow and fiery place That fire is very hungry and greedy Its sound is very dreadful and loud Its flames are shining very brightly It cannot be extinguished It is a very dark and dreadful place Those who are pious shall be taken into Heaven in groups They shall be immune from punishments They will be far away from the fire of Hell They will enjoy the pleasures of Heaven They will be satisfied and pleased with their dwelling place These are the persons who lived a pious and good



O People ! Think of those things which will help you in the next world Be ready to die with good deeds Verily the dreadful death is before you You cannot untie its knots You cannot escape it May God keep us on the path of our Holy Prophet and may God have mercy on us and pardon us ! Live in Kufa Have patience over the seditious activities of the enemies Do not move your tongues swords and hands in the matter Do not do a thing which God has forbidden you to do for he who dies on his bed and recognizes God His Prophet and Alhul Bait is a martyr He will be rewarded for his good actions He deserves the reward for the good deeds which he intended to do Remember that the time of everything is fixed and limited

---

## HIS SERMON NO 192

### On Piety

All praise be to God Who is Great and Exalted I praise Him for His constant blessings and great favours He hath much patience and due to His patience He pardons the sins of people He is Just He knoweth the past and the future He is the Creator of the Earth and the Sky He is the Maker of everything He neither followed any one nor did He receive education from any one He neither took advice from any architect nor did he ever commit fault I testify that Muhammad is His Servant and His Apostle He was born at a time when people were in great distress and troubles and they were the victims of ignorance and superstitions O People ! I advise you to fear God You owe a duty to God You can discharge your duty through piety Invoke the help of God to make you pious Verily today (in this

world) piety is a shield and tomorrow (on the Day of Judgement) it shall lead you to Heaven. The path of piety is clear and straight. God is the Protector of a pious person. There are only a few persons who are really pious and virtuous. God says — "And very few of my servants are grateful." The Holy Quran Part XXII Ch XXXIV 13

Try to be pious and advise your children to be pious. Make bad people virtuous. Shake off your lethargy and ignorance. Pass your days in piety. Wipe out your sins through it. Cure your diseases by it. Make haste to die with piety. Take warning from the person who has lost it. Abstain from him. Make friendship with a pious man. Protect yourselves from sins through piety. Do not feel inclined to this world. Love the next world. Do not under rate the man whom piety has exalted. Do not over rate the man whom world has made great. Do not look at the glittering things of the world. Do not listen to the world. Do not respond its call. Do not be attracted by its charms. Its promises are false. It is subject to decay and destruction. Its good things are taken away. Beware! the world is a fire-runner of punishments. It is like a refractory horse. It speaks lies. It is ungrateful. It turns against truth. It is changeable and destructible. There is disgrace in its honour. The efforts for worldly gains are useless. It is a battle field. It is the place of destruction. People stand upon their legs to depart from this world. The paths of this world are misleading. It deceives and befools people. Worldly ambitions and gains are responsible for the destruction of the people. It has grieved so many persons. Their hands and feet are cut off. The wild beasts have taken out the flesh of some persons with their paws and jaws. It has shed the blood of some persons in battles. Some persons are wringing their hands. Some are in great sorrow. Some complain of the defect of their opinions. Some are frustrated and disappointed in the achievement of their aim. Verily treachery is of little avail. When death overtakes a Man suddenly, he cannot escape it. Alas! Alas! Whatever passes passes. The time of prayers is spent. The worldly life which is perishable and destructible passes away. Let the Earth and the Sky weep over the lamentable condition of the people. Now they cannot get rid of punishments.

from Paradise His commandments and prohibitions are the same for angels and human beings and none has the right to make illegal things legal

O People! Abstain from Satanic ways By God! he is making false promises to you and deceiving you He said My Lord! because Thou hast made life evil to me I shall certainly make evil fair seeming to them on earth and I will certainly cause them all to deviate' The Quran Part XIV Ch XV 39

I shall be hidden from their eyes but I shall mislead and misguide them from a great distance The proud arrogant ignorant people proved by their actions the truth of his statement Those of you who are arrogant have yielded to him He has a strong hold over you It is now quite clear which of you are victims His armies have attacked you

These Satanic forces have humiliated and disgraced you You are thrown into the whirlpool of murders They have trampled upon you They have cut off your throats They have pounded your noses The Satan has created sedition in your secular and ecclesiastical affairs He has disturbed everything Try to undo the mischiefs which he has done

By God! He arrogantly treated Adam He humiliates and disgraces you He has made his cavalry (superstitions) attack you and set his infantry (thoughts) upon your paths so that you might not escape Now you cannot save yourselves from disgrace poverty and dangers

Forget the pride of blood and extinguish the enmity of the days of ignorance for it is the Satan who creates such feelings in the Muslim Put on your heads the crowns of humility and meekness and trample under your feet pride ambition and greatness Throw off the chain of arrogance from your necks

Fight against the Satan with the weapon of humility and meekness Verily in every group there are his cavalry, infantry and helpers Do not be proud like the man who

## HIS SERMON No. 193.

### On the Censure of the Satan

All praise be to God Who put on the robe of respect and greatness He adopted these two attributes for Himself and made the use of these attributes illegal for His creation He adopted them because of His far flung Empire and Greatness He censures those persons who fight against Him for these two attributes He tried the admitted and approximate angels to find out the humble and meek and the arrogant and proud So God Who knoweth the secrets and hearts of the people said —

“When your Lord said to the angels Surely I am going to create a mortal from dust, so when I have made him complete and breathed into him of My inspiration, then fall down making obeisance to him” The Quran Part XXIII Ch XXXVIII 71 and 72

The Satan felt ashamed He was proud of his superiority over Adam He looked down upon Adam So he is the enemy of God and ring leader of the disobedient He is the Imam of the proud and the arrogant He laid the foundation of pride He fought against God over His greatness He wanted to cast off the robe of humility and meekness and put on the robe of greatness Do you not know how God hath disgraced him due to His pride He hath humiliated him He is the accursed by Heaven He shall be thrown into the burning fire of Hell

If God had wanted to create Adam from dazzling light or from overpowering smell (scent), He could have done it, but He would not do it, for in that case the angels would have prostrated their faces before him without any hesitation, and the trial of the angels would have but little value Now take warning from the condition of the Satan He had prayed to God for a thousand years but all his long prayers and efforts were set at naught in the twinkling of an eye In these circumstances none can be immune from the wrath of God if he commits similar sins God will never admit a person to Heaven for the sin for which He hath driven out an angel

from Paradise His commandments and prohibitions are the same for angels and human beings and none has the right to make illegal things legal

O People! Abstain from Satanic ways By God! he is making false promises to you and deceiving you "He said My Lord! because Thou hast made life evil to me, I shall certainly make evil fair seeming to them on earth, and I will certainly cause them all to deviate" The Quran Part XIV Ch XV 39

'I shall be hidden from their eyes but I shall mislead and misguide them from a great distance' The proud arrogant, ignorant people proved by their actions the truth of his statement Those of you who are arrogant have yielded to him He has a strong hold over you It is now quite clear which of you are victims His armies have attacked you

These Satanic forces have humiliated and disgraced you You are thrown into the whirlpool of murders They have trampled upon you They have cut off your throats They have pounded your noses The Satan has created sedition in your secular and ecclesiastical affairs He has disturbed everything Try to undo the mischiefs which he has done

By God! He arrogantly treated Adam He humiliates and disgraces you He has made his cavalry (superstitions) attack you and set his infantry (thoughts) upon your paths so that you might not escape Now you cannot save yourselves from disgrace, poverty and dangers

Forget the pride of blood and extinguish the enmity of the days of ignorance, for it is the Satan who creates such feelings in the Muslim Put on your heads the crowns of humility and meekness and trample under your feet pride, ambition and greatness Throw off the chain of arrogance from your necks

Fight against the Satan with the weapon of humility and meekness Verily in every group there are his cavalry, infantry and helpers Do not be proud like the man who

arrogantly treated his brother (Qabeel killed his own real brother Habeel) Due to jealousy he became angry with his brother The Satan made him so proud that he murdered his brother and fell into eternal disgrace

Beware ! You have become victims of seditions You created disturbances in this world because you are the enemies of God and the Amirul Momineen Abstain from the pride and ignorance of the pre Islamic days Fear God ! Fear God ! Pride is the cause of enmity It is the clarion call of the Satan He has deceived the past people through this Pride makes the people narrow minded and small hearted

Beware ! Fear to obey those leaders who are proud and arrogant, who create disturbance in the world for material gains and disregard the Commandments and prohibitions of God They are ungrateful persons Verily they are the pillars of seditions and disturbance They are the swords of ancestral pride of the days before the rise of Islam

Fear God ! Consider over the blessings of God and do not be enemies of one another Do not be jealous of one another Do not respond to the call of the seditious leaders They are the source and foundation of corruptions and evils They disobey the orders of God The Satan has made them the camels to carry the burden of his ignorance They make his army which attack others They are his translators and interpreters He talks to you through them to misguide you He enters your eyes through them He has completely be fooled you

Take warning from the fate of the proud nations of the past which were subjected to great hardships and suffering So give up pride and arrogance Seek the protection of God Listen ! If God had allowed any persons to be proud, they would have been His chosen prophets but He did not do it He was pleased with their humility and meekness They prostrated their faces before Him They became the servants of the Momins They (Prophets) were considered to be weak and helpless God tried them by hunger They had to face great hardships and difficulties He tested them how much they were afraid of God The Holy Quran says —“Do you

think that by what we aid them with wealth and children, we are hastening to them of good things? Nay, they do not perceive" Part XVIII Ch XXIII 55 and 56

Verily God tries the proud people with His friends who are considered to be weak before them Prophet Moses (Peace be on him) with his brother Haroon went to Pharoah. Both of them were wearing woollen cloaks and had staffs in their hands. They said to Pharoah, "If you embrace Islam, you shall retain your empire and power." Pharoah thereupon said to his audience, "Are you not surprised to hear their words about my empire and power? You see them in wretched and miserable condition. Why should I not give them a few pieces of gold?" Pharoah uttered these words because he considered gold to be a blessing and hated their tattered garments.

If God had wanted, at the time of creation of the Prophets, to give them (prophets) treasures of gold and silver, places for plantations of gardens, and to make birds and beasts obey their orders, He would have surely done it. But if He had done so, the wealthy and proud people could not be tested with the poor and humble persons. There would be no question of rewards and punishments. The followers of God and the Prophets could not be rewarded for the success in their ordeals. God made His Prophets with strong faith and firm convictions but apparently He made them poor and weak. Despite their extreme poverty, they were contented and happy.

If these Prophets had been so much strong and powerful that none would attack and persecute them, if they had been masters of such empires as would attract the people, then people would have obeyed and followed them in large numbers and they would not have treated them proudly and arrogantly. But power or wealth would have been responsible for their acceptance of the faith. In either of these cases, their acceptance of faith would not have been due to the fear of God. He wanted that people should obey His Prophets, testify His Books and carry out His Commandments only for His sake and not for any other consideration. The harder the trials and ordeals, the greater the rewards. Do you not see that all the Prophets from Hazrat Adam to the last

Prophet Hazrat Muhammad were stoned? Those stones with which the Prophets were beaten did not hear and see anything. They could not harm or benefit any one. He Made Kaaba with stones which is a place of benefit for people. They go on pilgrimage to it (Kaaba, the Holy House of God in Mecca) with great zeal. There they call loudly the name of God to win His favour. With shrivelled hair and dust on their faces, they run taking their garments on their backs. The pilgrimage to the Holy City of Mecca is a great trial and ordeal. God has made it to be one of the means to attain Paradise.

If God had made His House (Kaaba) in a place full of green gardens bearing fruits, wheat fields, pastures and running streams, the trials of the pilgrims would have been very easy and so they would have received less rewards for their pilgrimage and as such it would have lost its significance and importance. If God had made the Kaaba with precious stones the Satan would not have created so much misunderstanding, doubt and suspicion in the minds of the people. But He tries His people through hardships and difficulties. He examines their prayers. He puts them into troubles. He does it deliberately to make them humble and meek, obedient and submissive, and if they succeed in their trials, the way to Heaven becomes easy for them.

Fear God! Abstain from cruelty and pride. Arrogance is a strong trap of the Satan. It deceives and destroys people. It is a deadly poison. Its effect is very destructive and ruinous. God protects the true Muslims from pride through prayers, fasts, poor rate, etc. While praying they prostrate their faces on the ground and thus they become humble and meek. By keeping fast, they suffer the pangs of hunger and consider themselves to be dependent upon God. While paying poor rate, they distribute the money amongst the poor and needy persons and thus they come into touch with them. These things make people humble and meek and they get rid of pride.

O Kufaites! I never found any people more inclined to any worldly cause than you are! You are inclined to a



Satanic cause The Satan was prejudiced against Adam because of his ill nature He said, "I am made of fire and Adam is made of earth" But the obedient and submissive people of God feel inclined to a noble and good cause They said "We have big families We have much wealth We are not the accursed people" If prejudice is necessary, you should have prejudice for good things You must have prejudice for acquiring good habits Protect your neighbours Fulfil your promises Obey good people Disobey proud people Try to attain excellence Abstain from tyranny and rebellion Consider murder to be a great sin and crime Do justice to the people Control your anger Refrain from seditious activities Fear the punishments of God which have befallen the past nations due to their sins Take warnings from them and do not follow their examples When they loved one another and became good, their condition was changed They began to live in ease and comfort They got rid of their enemies People become weak and powerless when they have malice and enmity in their hearts and do not help one another

Think of the Muslims who passed before you How did they live in trials and ordeals? Were they not stout and strong? Were they not able to bear the greatest hardships? Were they not very extremely poor? The cruel kings arrested them They punished and tortured them They disgraced and humiliated them They had no alternative but to undergo these punishments patiently But when God found them successful in their trials, He gave them protection and respect They became leaders and guides and they were exalted to very high positions

Now consider over the unity of the good and great men of the nation They had a common aim and ideal They were inclined to truth They helped one another They had the power of anticipation Were they not kings? Now think what happened when they were disunited They ceased to love one another They fought amongst themselves They became divided God humiliated and disgraced them These people have left their examples as warnings for you

Take warning from the conditions of the Banu Isma'el, Banu Ishaque, Banu Israil Their conditions are very much

similar Consider how they were disunited and divided They were ruled by the Persian Emperors and the Roman Emperors They lived in ease and comfort and enjoyed the pleasures of this world But ultimately they were left in poverty and disgrace They began to look after camels and sheep They became the worst people They had no respect and prestige They buried their daughters alive in the graves They worshipped idols They were the enemies of one another They were ignorant They were disunited divided and weak Now think of the complete change in their conditions The Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace be on Him and his descendants) was born amongst them God ordained people to follow him and his Shariat They are ordered to love him God showered His blessings upon him He propagated Islam under very adverse circumstances and succeeded in his mission He overcame his difficulties and became emperor Now none could harm him Remember that you are becoming disobedient and insubordinate You are relapsing to the conditions of the pre Islamic days The truth is that the rope of love tied all the Muslims together The Muslims became the chosen people of God because love and affection united them

Know it well that after migration you became the inhabitants of ignorance You were friends but now you are disunited You are only nominal Muslims and you have very weak faith You prefer the fire of Hell to disgrace You are marring the spirit of Islam by your actions You are undermining the foundation of Islam which was made protection for you by God Verily if you seek protection from anything but Islam and the unbelievers fight against you neither Gabriel nor Meekhaeel neither the Muhajereen nor the Ansar can help you You may continue to fight amongst yourselves, till God punishes you The examples how God punished the past people for their bad actions are before you *but you seem to have forgotten the wrath of God* and you do not expect any punishment from Him You are sadly mistaken in holding this view God punished the foolish peoples of the past for the commissions of sins and the wise persons for the omissions of His orders Beware! You have cut off the knots of Islam You have disregarded its

commandments and prohibitions Beware! God ordered me to fight against the seditious people and the breakers of promises Accordingly, I fought against the breakers of the oath of allegiance I fought against the cruel people (Syrians) I humiliated and disgraced the Kharijites As regards the Satan of Radha (Murwiya bin Abu Sufiyan), if God had allowed me to fight against him again, I would have defeated him and scattered his army in all directions I killed the great Arabs I destroyed the new branches of the tribes of Rabiyya and Muzar You are aware that I am very closely related with the Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be on him) When I was a lad, he took me up in his lap, he pressed me with his breast and he kept me with him He gave me food from his mouth to eat He never found me telling lies and doing anything bad God appointed the angel Gabriel to show the Holy Prophet good morals and manners right from the very beginning of his childhood I followed in the footsteps of the Prophet very closely Daily he gave me some instruction and told me to follow it The Holy Prophet lived in the mount of Hira every year for one month and none but me saw him there I saw the light of revelation on his face, when Gabriel brought the first revelation from God to Muhammad (Peace be on him), the Satan cried I asked the Holy prophet what that cry was He said, "This is the cry of the Satan Now he is despondent and disappointed Verily you hear what I hear You see what I see But you are not a prophet You are the minister of the Prophet Verily you shall stick to Islam."

I know that you will not embrace Islam. The man (Abu Jahal or Atba bin Waleed) who will be killed and thrown into the well is amongst you and the man (Abu Sufiyan or Akrama bin Abu Jahal) who creates factions and disunity amongst his groups is also with you." Then the Holy Prophet said, "O Tree! If you believe in God and the Day of Judgment and if you consider me to be the Prophet of God, then come to me with your roots by the permission of God." By God! The tree came to the Holy Prophet with its roots and branches making a very loud sound. It spread one high branch on the Prophet and some small branches on me also, for I was sitting on his right side. When the Quraish saw this, they arrogantly said, "Now order that half of the tree should remain here and the other half should go to its place." The Prophet gave it this order which was immediately obeyed. Seeing this, they proudly said, "Order this half part also to go and let the tree be exactly as it was before." In accordance with the order of the Prophet, it returned and the tree became exactly as it was before. Thereupon I said, "There is no god but God. O Prophet! I am the first to believe in you. I testify that you are the Prophet of God." The Quraish said, "No, No! He is an expert magician. Can any other person testify like this small boy?" They make this reference to me. Verily I belong to the group which does not care for any censure in the way of God. Their (the people of this group) faces are like the faces of truthful ones. They talk like pious persons. They pray to God at night and they are the guides of the seekers of Truth in the day. They are attached to the Holy Quran. They revive the path of God and the traditions of the Holy Prophet. They have no touch of pride in them. They have no worldly ambitions. They are not envious and malicious. They do not create seditions. Their hearts lie in Heaven and their bodies are busy in prayers.

---

### HIS SERMON No. 194.

#### On Attributes of Piety.

(Hamam was a pious companion of Hazrat Ali. He once asked the Amirul Momineen to explain to him the qualities of a pious man. The Amir thereupon said :—)

O Haman ! Fear God and do good deeds for ' Surely Allah is with those who guard (against evil) and those who do good (to others) ' The Holy Quran Part XIV Ch XVI 128

Haman was not satisfied with this and requested him to throw more light upon this subject He said —

All praise be to God Who is the Creator of the Earth and the sky He is the Self sufficient and fearless of the sins of His creation Neither the disobedience of the insubordinate people can harm Him nor can the obedience of the obedient people benefit Him He gave them livelihood and made them live in suitable places in the world Amongst them those who are pious have excellence They speak the truth They are moderate in their dress They walk meekly and mildly They do not feel inclined to see those things which are illegal They listen to those things which are beneficial to them They do not grumble at hardships and difficulties they are rather pleased with them If God had not fixed the period of their worldly life they would not have liked to live here even for one moment due to the hope of the reward and fear of punishment from God They think of God only and attach absolutely no importance to any worldly thing They seem to have enjoyed the pleasures of Heaven and suffered the tortures of Hell They are sad and melancholy in this world They do not harm any one They are physically very weak (due to constant prayers and fear of God) Their wants are but little Their conscience is clear They patiently bear the misfortunes of this transitory world The people of the world want to meet them but they do not like it They live in great difficulties and troubles They do not enjoy worldly pleasures They recite nicely the Holy Quran in prayers at night, and weep It removes their ignorance They pause to read the tempting description of Heaven in any verse and try to attain it They are very much afraid to read the description of Hell in any verse They prostrate their faces on the ground in prayers They pray to God to exempt them from the burning fires and tortures of Hell In the day time they are patient, pious, learned and wise They have become lean and thin due to the fear of God Those who see them think that they are ill though they are really not

all The people say that they (the pious persons) look perplexed and confounded Of course they look so because they are not satisfied with their prayers They always find fault with them They are afraid whether or not God will accept their good deeds When any person talks about their piety they are afraid because they say that they know themselves better than him and God knows them better than they themselves know of them O God! Do not take us to task for what they say about us Make us better than what they think of us and pardon those sins of ours which they do not know You will find every pious person having these qualities in him He will be strong and firm in his faith He will be greedy of learning and knowledge He will have patience He will use moderation in everything He will weep while praying Even in dire needs and necessity, difficulties and troubles he shall not lose patience He will have honest means of living He will take pleasure in guidance He will look down upon avarice He will do good deeds He will be always afraid of God He will pass his day and night in prayers and gratitude to God He will be pleased to think of the blessings of God and he will be afraid to think of the punishments of God He shall never feel inclined to do a bad thing He hates those things which are perishable He has patience and wisdom He does what he says He has only a few wants He has but little defects in him He is contented and satisfied It is easy for him to earn his livelihood His faith is safe His passions are dead His anger has subsided People expect good from him and are immune from any harm from him Even if he sits amongst ignorant people, his name shall be written in the list of those persons who always remember God He pardons the person who persecutes him He forgives the usurper of his rights He is kind to the man who is cruel to him He is away from evils He is very mild in his talk He never does any harm to any one He is always ready to do good to every one In dangers and misfortunes he is calm and undisturbed In troubles and difficulties he is patient In prosperity, he is grateful to God He does not oppress the man with whom he has enmity He does not misappropriate the thing which is entrusted to him He never calls any person with bad names He does not harm

his neighbours When misfortune befalls any person he does not blame him He never goes astray from the right path He never participates in the wrong If he is silent he is not sad and if he laughs he never laughs loudly If he is persecuted he patiently bears it till God takes his oppressor to task He himself suffers but gives comfort to others He does not mix with the person who avoids him He abstains from the world If a man meets him he meets him If he refrains from people it is not due to pride

The narrator says that Hamam died to hear this sermon Thereupon the Amirul Momineen said —

By God ! I hesitated to tell him these things for this reason Over advice does not suit every person A person asked him why he did not act upon this principle He said —

Death is inevitable and unavoidable None can escape it Never utter such words in future The Satan made you say this

---

## HIS SERMON No 195

### On the Hypocrites

All praise be to God Who enabled people to obey Him and refrain from sins I invoke His help to keep me firm on the straight path I testify that Muhammad (Peace be on him) is His servant and His Apostle He bore all the hardships and troubles to please God He kept his anger under control for His pleasure His relatives differed from his opinion People opposed him The Arabs badly treated him O People ! I advise you to fear God I frighten you of the hypocrites for they are the misguided people and they will mislead others They themselves are lost in ignorance and sins and they will make others sinful They change their colours like chameleons They create factions and seditions They always lie in ambush to mislead you They look pure but their hearts are impure Their talks cure diseases but their actions are incurable diseases They are

jealous of prosperous persons They increase difficulties and troubles They make people despondent and disappointed They make some one their victim everywhere People pity them The hypocrites praise one another When they blame any person they expose him threadbare If they become rulers they misappropriate money They adopt all crooked means to achieve their end When any person begins to do any work they disappoint him so that they may carry on their own work and make huge profits They take money for praising any one They make the path of falsehood very easy They belong to the group of the Satan Beware! They are the devil's party now surely the devil's party are the losers The Holy Quran Part XXVIII Ch LVIII 19

---

## HIS SERMON No 196

### Praise of God

All praise be to God Who showed the Grandeur of His Greatness and the signs of His Kingship in such a way that wise persons are thunder struck at His wonderful creation He prevented people from investigating into the significance of His attributes I testify that there is no God who deserves praise but Him I believe in the truth of my testimony It is free from hypocrisy This belief is certain I testify that Muhammad (Peace be on Him) is His servant and His apostle He was born at a time when there was complete ignorance and darkness He showed the straight path to the people He advised them May God shower His choicest blessings on him and his descendants O People! Understand that God did not create you in vain He did not leave you without any guard He knows the blessings which He bestows upon you Now seek His help for victory Turn to Him Invoke His blessings There is no curtain between you and Him He is the Omnipotent and the Omnipresent He is with all persons and gems His generosity cannot lessen His treasures He is generous to all He can listen to all simultaneously His anger cannot prevent Him from being Merciful and kind and His Mercy cannot prevent Him from punishing the criminals He is manifest and Hidden He is



near as well as far He is very exalted and High He did not create people to take their help due to any weakness O People! I advise you to fear God, for piety is a string which leads you into Heaven and it is a pillar which stops you from falling into the Hell Be pious Piety shall take you to the place of honour, ease and comfort on the Day of Judgment On the Day of Resurrection Hazrat Israfeel shall blow his trumpet and every one shall die Big mountains shall be razed to the ground and hard stones shall become soft On that day there will be neither any intercessor to plead for you nor any relative to save you from punishment None shall benefit you on the Day of Reckoning

---

### **HIS SERMON No. 197.**

#### **On the Evils of the World.**

God, the Master of the Worlds, created the Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace be on him) at a time when there was no trace of the path of God The clear and straight path was unknown to the people O People! I advise you to fear God I frighten you of this world because you shall have to leave it It is a place of malice and enmity He who lives here is a traveller The world is like a boat carrying passengers All of a sudden the storm comes Some of the passengers are drowned and some of them, passing through great difficulties, reach the shore Even those who reach the shore cannot escape death O People! try to do good and virtuous deeds so long as your tongues are under your control and you are healthy Now take advantage of this opportunity when you can move about freely, otherwise Death which is certain and inevitable shall overtake you

---

### **HIS SERMON No 198**

#### **On Jihad**

Those companions of the Holy Prophet who were the protectors of Islam knew that I never violated any orders

of God or the prophet I endangered my life to save the life of the Holy Prophet on many occasions I stood firmly and bravely at those places from where even very strong and stout warriors retreated So God showered His blessings upon me The Holy Prophet died with his head upon my breast The saliva of his mouth ran to my hand which I applied to my face I made arrangement to give bath to the Prophet and the angels helped me in this work The Ahlul Bait and the angels began to weep Some angels came down from the sky and some went up the sky I heard them They offered prayers on the Prophet We buried him in the grave Now who can have more rights over the Prophet in life and death than me ? Use your eyes and wisdom and make haste for Jihad It is proper that your intentions should be honest and right in fighting against the enemy By God ! I am on the straight path You listen to what I say I invoke the pardon of God for you and me both

---

## HIS SERMON No 199

### On Piety

He heareth the voice of the wild animals of lonely places He knoweth the sins of persons committed in privacy He knoweth the conditions of fishes in big oceans He knoweth the high waves of the oceans in furious storm and gale I testify that Muhammad (Peace be on him) is His chosen prophet the messenger of His revelations He is the messenger of His mercy and kindness O People ! I advise you to fear God Who hath created you and to whom you will return You can achieve your aim through Him The satisfaction of your wants lies in His power He is the refuge of your fear and danger Remember that piety is the remedy of the pain of your heart It makes your eyes see the truth It cures the disease of your body It purifies your conscience It removes the fear of your heart It gives you light and removes ignorance So obey the commandments and prohibitions of God Make piety a shield for the day of fear and danger Make it a torch for your dark

grave The obedience of God shall give you satisfaction and it shall save you from the burning fire of Hell The hardships of a man who fears God are removed The bitter things become pleasant for him Sorrows and griefs are removed from him Difficulties become easy for him After famine and scarcity, the clouds of mercy rain for him The mercy which was indifferent to him became kind to him Blessings were showered upon him Fear God Who benefited you with His advice He sent His Prophet to advise you He showed His favours to you Now pray to Him Islam is the faith of God He hath chosen it and reared it He hath made it for His best people Its pillars stand on His love, He hath humiliated and disgraced all other false religions due to His love for Islam The Muslims gave crushing defeats to the enemies of Islam with His help They destroyed the pillars of ignorance Islam quenched the thirst of the people People accepted Islam in large numbers There is no disgrace for those who embrace Islam Its pillars are strong They are not subject to decay Its tree cannot be uprooted Its path cannot be effaced Its branches cannot be cut off Its paths are not narrow Its light cannot be extinguished What is Islam ? It is nothing but Truth It is a stream from which hundred streamlets spring It is a torch which gives light It is a minaret which guides the travellers It is a water place which quenches the thirst of the thirsty people God hath made it the pillar of His pleasure Take advantage of it Follow it Place it in its proper place Now listen ! God created the Holy Prophet at a time when the end of the world was at hand The brilliance of the world was changed into darkness The people of the world were groaning due to much pain The world was on the brink of ruin and destruction God the nourisher of the worlds made Muhammad (Peace of Allah be on him) the mercy for his followers, the spring for the people of his age, the object of greatness and pride for his helpers Then God sent the Holy Quran to him which is a light that can never be extinguished It is an ocean whose depth cannot be found out It is a path and those who walk upon it are never lost It is a ray which never becomes dim It distinguishes between the right and the wrong It is a foundation whose pillars can never be destroyed It is an unfailing remedy It is a power

whose helpers can never be overcome It is a truth whose supporters are never sad Is is the mine of faith It contains the springs of knowledge It is the ocean of knowledge There are gardens and springs of justice in it It is an ocean whose water people cannot draw out Its water cannot harm any one God made the Holy Quran an unmixed blessing for the learned, wise and good persons It is an unfailing remedy God made it a rope whose knots are very strong It is a refuge whose top is very high It honours protects, guides, pardons those who embrace it, follow it take to it and act upon it It is a clear and tangible proof for the existence of God It raises him who raises (upholds) it He who fights with its help is victorious It is a camel for him who acts upon it It is a sign for the person who reads it with understanding It is shield for the man who puts it on It is a knowledge for the person who listens to it It is a tradition for the narrator

---

## HIS SERMON No. 200.

### On Prayers.

Offer your prayers (Salaat) Take care of it Seek the nearness of God through it, for it is compulsory for Momins and its times are fixed Did you not hear the reply of those who would be thrown into Hell ?

“What has brought you into hell ? They shall say We were not of those who prayed ” The Quran, Part XXIX Ch LXXIV 42 and 43

Remember that Salaat wipes out the sins like the falling of leaves from trees It unties the knots of sins The Holy Prophet says, “Salaat is like a spring which is at the door of a person If a man takes bath in it five times daily, there shall be no dirt on his body ” Only those Momins who cannot be prevented from it by the temptations of wealth and children recognize its rights ‘Men whom neither merchandise nor selling diverts from the remembrance of Allah and the keeping up of prayer and the giving of poor rate’ The Quran, Part XVIII Ch XXIV 37

The Holy Prophet was given the glad tidings of Heaven with this order —

“And enjoin prayer on your followers, and steadily adhere to it” The Quran, Part XVI Ch XX 132

The Holy Prophet suffered physically very much due to excess of prayers. He ordered his family to follow in his footsteps and he himself cheerfully and patiently bore all the hardships.

Poor rate is also ordained to be one of the means for nearness to God. He who pays it willingly and cheerfully is free from the fire of Hell. None should feel sorry while paying poor rate, for if a man does it he is misguided and he shall be put to disgrace and shame for a long time. It is also incumbent upon you to return trusts for he who is not honest is deprived of the rewards of the next world. God asked the spreading skies, vast earths, big mountains if any one of them would like to become trustee but they refused to accept it though they are so big and great. They were afraid of the punishment of dishonesty and misappropriation in the trust.

Surely he is unjust and ignorant ’ Part XXII  
Ch XXXIII 72 (The Holy Quran)

Verily God is not ignorant of what the man does in day and night. He knoweth the actions of the people fully well. Listen! Your limbs are His witnesses. Your instruments (powers) are His army. Your conscience is His spy. Your private life is well known to Him.

---

## HIS SERMON No 201.

### On Muawiyah

By God! Muawiyah is not wiser and intelligent than me, but he is cunning and unscrupulous. If these things had not been bad, I would have been the best politician. A person who is cruel and cunning violates the principles of Islam, and one who violates and disregards the principles

of Islam is an infidel There will be a sign of the tyrant with which he will be distinguished on the Day of Judgment By God ! I am not ignorant of the cunningness of the wily people I have not become wild due to the oppression of any one

---

## HIS SERMON No 202

### On the Straight Path

O People ! As there are only a few persons who walk on the straight path you need not be afraid of Truth Generally people are indulging in worldly pleasures ease and comfort which will last only for a short time but their punishments shall last for a long time O People ! When they (People) feel inclined to commit sins God punishes them The camel of Saleh (Peace be on him) was cut off by one person but the whole nation had to suffer the punishment of his sin because they did not prevent him from doing it God says

But they stabbed her then regretted Part XIX  
Ch XXVI 157 The Holy Quran

O People ! He who walked on the straight path reached the springs and he who opposed the straight path perished

---

## HIS SERMON No 203

### On the Death of Hazrat Fatimah

O Holy Prophet ! Peace be on you on my behalf and on behalf of your daughter who is to lie in the grave near you O Prophet of God ! My patience has become less due to the death of your dear daughter This catastrophe has weakened me But I bore patiently the separation from you and so shall I do now I put you into the grave with my own hand and your soul departed from your body when you were keeping your head on my breast Surely we are Allahs and to Him we shall surely return Part II Ch. II 156 (The Quran)

You died and your sign (Hazrat Fatimah) also died  
Now my sorrow is eternal I cannot sleep at night unless I  
also accompany you in Heaven In the very near future  
your daughter will inform you how your followers are ill  
treating me although you died only a little time ago I  
bid you and your dear daughter good bye If I now return  
from your grave it is not due to any sorrow and if I stay  
here on your grave it will not be due to any doubt regarding  
the reward which God hath promised to those who have  
patience in griefs

---

## HIS SERMON No 204

### An Advice to his Companions

O People! This world is transitory and the next world  
is permanent and eternal Make provision for the next world  
God knoweth your secrets Take out worldly ambitions from  
your hearts before you die You are tried in this world  
You are created for the next world Alas! when a person  
dies people ask what property (legacy) he has left and angels  
ask what good deeds he has done May God have mercy on  
your ancestors! Give some of your wealth in charity which  
may be your provision for the next world Do leave all your  
wealth in this world lest it should be a thing of trouble for you

---

## HIS SERMON No 205

### An Advice to his Companions

May God have mercy upon you! Be ready to depart  
from this world as the bugle for departure has already been  
sounded Shorten the period of your life in this world  
Make the best provision for the next world Remember  
that dreadful valleys and horrible paths are before you and  
you shall have to cross them Know it well that death is at  
hand and you are under its control All of a sudden difficul-  
ties shall overtake you So cut off your worldly connections  
and make provision of piety

## HIS SERMON No 206

(After taking the oath of allegiance Talha and Zubar began to blame Hazrat Ali for not consulting them in the affairs of Caliphate The Amirul Momain thereupon said —)

You got angry over a trifling matter You disregarded many good deeds Will you tell me the right of which I have deprived you ? What share of yours have I taken ? Did any Muslim tell me any reasonable thing which I hesitated to do or of which I was ignorant ? By God ! I did not like this Caliphate but you invited me to accept it and so I accepted it When I became Caliph I began to rule according to the teachings of the Holy Quran and the traditions of the Holy Prophet I do not need any help from you in following the Quran and the Prophet But if ever I had stood in need of taking consultation from you I would have done it without any hesitation As regards the equal distribution of the booty I do it in accordance of the teachings of the Holy Quran and as such you and your friends are not justified in blaming me for it May God help me and you on the straight path ! May He give me and you patience ! May God have mercy upon him who has seen the truth and helped it or who has seen the tyranny and set it right and who became a supporter of the true cause !

---

## HIS SERMON No 207

(Some of Hazrat Ali's followers abused the Syrians in the battle of Siffin When he heard of it he said —)

I think it undesirable for you that you should abuse others but if you describe their evils and bad actions it is allowed Instead of abusing them you say this —O God ! Save our and their blood being shed ! Unite us ! Bring them on the straight path from ignorance Let them recognize truth Keep them aloof from malice and enmity due to ignorance



## HIS SERMON No 208

(One day the Amirul Momineen saw Hazrat Imam Husain fighting very desperately in the battle of Siffin, and he said to his companions —)

Protect this boy for my sake lest his death shall break my heart, for I am very miserly as regards the deaths of both of them (Hazrat Imam Husain and Hazrat Imam Hasan) I do not like their deaths lest the progeny of the Holy Prophet should come to an end

---

## HIS SERMON No 209

### On the Decision of Arbitration.

O People! I ordered you to do what I considered to be proper but the fight with the enemy made you weak By God! If you had fought a little more bravely, the enemy would have received a crushing defeat Also! I was your Amir till yesterday but today I am your subject I ruled over you till yesterday but you rule over me today Really you preferred this wordly life to the life of the next world and now I cannot alter a thing which you do not like

---

## HIS SERMON No 210

(He went to see his companion Ala bin Ziyadul Haris who was ill in Basra and said —)

You did much to extend your wordly house but you are in need of the extension of your house of the next world If you want a big house in the next world because you have a big house in this world then you should feed and entertain the people, be kind to them give the rights of the people according to Shariat while living in this house, and then you shall achieve your aim Hearing these words Ala said, 'I complain against my brother Asim Ibne Ziyad to you' The Amirul Momineen said 'Why? What has he done?'

He said, "Wearing a cloak he has retired from this life" He said, "Bring him to me" When he came, the Amirul Momineen said, God hath made good things of the world legal for you Why do you consider them to be bad? God doth not like this renunciation of the world' He said, 'O Amirul Momineen' I follow your example You put on rough clothes You eat coarse and tasteless food He said, 'Alas! You are not like me God hath made it incumbent upon the true Imams and the just leaders to set an example to the needy and the poor so that they may not feel the pinch of abject poverty and helplessness"

---

## HIS SERMON No 211

### *On False Traditions.*

Truth and falsehood, obliteration and abrogation, general and particular things are in the hands of a man Verily once a false tradition was attributed to the Holy Prophet during his life time At once he said, "He who will deliberately tell lies against me (or attribute lies to me) shall go into Hell" There are four kinds of narrators of the traditions (1) Hypocrites—Those who pretend to be Muslims, but really they are not Muslims They do not avoid sins They deliberately tell lies against the Holy Prophet If people know that they are hypocrites and liars, they will not accept their statements But then they say that they are the companions of the Prophet they have seen him and listened to him As a matter of fact, God has informed you of the conditions of the hypocrites Now they (the hypocrites) became the leaders of ignorance and fast friends of those who invite others to Hell These false Imams made them (bad persons) rulers who derived much worldly gain through false traditions People in general always cooperate with kings and wealthy persons excepting those whom God may save (2) Secondly there are narrators who listened to Holy Prophet but they did not remember his actual words. Now they make mistakes in the narration of the traditions but they do not do it deliberately They narrate whatever they remember and act upon it and say that they have heard

it from the Prophet. Now if the Muslims know that they tell lies they will not listen to them and if they themselves know that they are mistaken, they shall not narrate false traditions. (3) Thirdly, there are persons who heard some traditions from the Holy Prophet but later on they were abrogated but they do not know of the abrogations. If they come to know of the abrogations they shall not act upon them, and other Muslims will not follow them provided that they are informed of the abrogations. (4) Fourthly there are narrators of traditions who are scrupulously honest. They never tell lies against the Prophet, for they hate lies. They are afraid of God. They respect the Holy Prophet. They do not make mistakes in their narrations. They tell the people the actual words of the Prophet. They say neither more nor less. There were two types of the traditions. Some of them were intended for special persons and others were meant for common people. Now these narrators could not understand the significance of those traditions and began to describe and interpret them in their own light. Moreover they were some people who liked to listen to the Holy Prophet but they could neither ask him any question nor could they understand him. They waited till some Arabs came and asked some questions from the Holy Prophet and these persons then could listen to the Holy Prophet and remembered whatever he said. Now these are the various reasons on account of which there are so many disputes and differences in traditions.

---

## HIS SERMON No 212

### On the Creation of the Earth

It is one of His great and wonderful mysteries that He made this dry earth of the surging and dreadfully boisterous water of the vast and big ocean. He then made different zones from this water and distinguished them from the sky. They stand in accordance with His orders. They are supported by the running water and the conquered ocean which obeys Him and which is calm and quiet due to His fear. He then made the hard stones hills and mountains. He fixed

them in their respective places Their tops are very high and their roots are deep under ground The mountains look very high and spreading Their tops go high up in the sky They are the pillars and protectors of this earth They are fixed in the earth to make it stationary The inhabitants of the earth are now quite safe because it does not move Verily God is exalted and High He protected this earth when it was surrounded by boisterous and surging waves of water He made it dry when everything around it was damp He made it the resting place for His creation He has also spread a very big ocean for them That ocean does not change its place It is fixed and stationary, although great storms and strong gales come there Verily there is warning for them who fear God

---

### HIS SERMON No 213

**He who did not Fight in the Cause of God was a bad Person.**

O God ! he who heard my honest, frank, truthful, harmless and beneficial speech and rejected it was a bad person He did not help those who fought in Thy cause He became lethargic in the cause of Islam O God ! Thou bestowest the blessing of martyrdom on people We invite Thy creations who live on the earth and the sky to be witnesses against this person These fighters in Thy cause may not require the help of this man Punish him for his sins

---

### HIS SERMON No 214

**Praise of God and the Holy Prophet.**

All praise be to God who hath no equal or peer His attributes are indescribable He is manifest to the wise persons because of His wonderful creation He is above comprehension and imagination He is the All Knowledge and All wisdom He doth everything without any reflection He cannot be hidden by darkness and ignorance He is Light The dark night or the bright sky has no effect over

Him Eyes cannot see Him He knoweth everything but none gives Him any information

He says about the Holy Prophet —

God created the Holy Prophet with a light He is His chosen Prophet People gathered round him He overcame his oppositions He removed his difficulties Uneven and rough grounds became even and soft due to him He dispelled ignorance and darkness from the right and the left

---

### HIS SERMON No 215

In praise of God, the Holy Prophet and his Descendants

I testify that God is just All His actions are based on justice He is the king and all His orders are final and inevitable I testify that Muhammad (Peace be on him) is His servant and His Apostle He was born of the best parents Remember that God hath created worshippers to worship him pillars (Prophets) to propagate His faith and protectors for those who obey Him Verily God hath also appointed for you a protector and helper if you obey Him That protector speaks and writes the truth He is firm in his straight path He helps all those persons who want his help Know it well that sincere and honest people of God are the protectors of His knowledge They protect His secrets They teach others They meet one another with love and affection They give the wine of the cognizance of God to others to drink They drink it to their fill They are not sceptics They are always in the presence of God They love one another due to their good nature They are the chosen people of God They are faultily faultless They have become pure due to trials and ordeals People should obey God They should avoid troubles and difficulties They should think that this world is transitory and they shall leave it very soon They must do some good actions for the next world

Blessed is the man who obeys his (true) leader and refrains from the leader who takes him to destruction He

let it be known to you (O People of Iraq and other places who are assembled here) that for the guidance (proper management) of your affairs God the nourisher of the world has set upon you a Right (duty) binding as regards myself and as I have a right upon me in the very same way you have a right upon myself. Now this right has the widest range of scope in its definition of the character and nature of our rights and is the narrowest of things in our practical dealings (talk about right and justice has no limit but the translation of the same into action is too difficult). Not a single man there exists who has a right upon the other but that the said other must have (also) some upon him (the former). And whereas a man has a right upon another the very same thus another must find somewhere (in some other person). And if it were such that some one has rights binding on others and he has none (for any one) upon himself (then thus) one sided right is the sole and special privilege of God The Almighty Who is (All pervading) Right in Himself. This (one sided right) is never intended for His creation for the reason that He has (sole power) and authority over all His creation. And His orders and commandments have been passed upon each and all with perfect and most impartial justice. But that He has made this (particular) right solely belonging to Himself binding upon His creation that they (all His creation) should all (without a single exception) submit to His will. And (simply) acting upon His own greatness and grace and over and above this making an addition to it so profuse as it is worthy of Him alone. He has ordained double reward for their (said) submission (to His will). After this out of His own (manifold) Rights (upon His own creation) he has fixed some for some of them (His creation) and some others upon some others (of them). He has made (all) these (Rights and their distribution upon His creation) proportionately equal in their ways and has (also) made some (of these) Rights in direct comparison with some (other of these Rights) reciprocally binding upon one another. Until and unless (therefore) a person does fulfil his own obligations towards others he is never in his rights to demand the fulfilment (by those others) of his own Rights over them. And (beware) the very greatest one of these Rights is that of the Ruler over the ruled and vice versa. These reciprocal rights have been made binding by

has received guidance because of his wisdom. He walks on the straight path of safety. He makes haste in finding out the true path before his death. He repents for his sins. He uses moderation in everything. Verily such a man is fortunate and he is destined to go into Heaven.

---

## HIS SERMON No 216

### The Prayer of the Amirul Momineen

All praise be to God. The day has dawned upon me when I am neither dead nor patient. I have neither committed any sin nor am I accused for bad actions. Neither my descendants have come to an end nor have I rejected my faith. I am not an atheist. I am not sceptic about the existence of God. None of the punishments which had befallen the past nations has fallen over me. I am the servant of God. I am cruel to my own passions. O God! Thou hast every right over me. I cannot take any thing but whatever Thou wilt give me. I cannot escape from any evil unless Thou savest me. O God! I seek Thy protection from poverty though Thou art rich. I seek Thy help lest I should go astray despite Thy guidance. I seek Thy protection lest I should be persecuted despite Thy kingship. O God! Let all the blessings which Thou hast conferred upon me remain with me till my death. Let the soul depart first and then take away whatever Thou hast bestowed upon me. O God! I seek Thy protection lest I should disobey Thy Commandments or go against Thy Religion. I seek Thy help lest inordinate ambitions should overcome me and make me their slave.

---

## HIS SERMON No 217

(Delivered on the occasion of the Battle of Siffin)

After praise (to God) and prayer (for peace and blessings on Muhammad the Holy Prophet and his noble descendants)

let it be known to you (O People of Iraque and otl er places  
 who are assembled here) that for the guidance (proper manage-  
 ment) of your affairs God the nourisher of the world has  
 set upon you a Right (duty) binding as regards myself and  
 as I have a right upon me in the very same way you have a  
 right upon myself Now this right has the widest range of  
 scope in its definition of the character and nature of our rights  
 and is the narrowest of things in our practical dealings (talk  
 about right and justice has no limit but the translation of the  
 same into action is too difficult) Not a single man there  
 exists who has a right upon the other but that the said other  
 must have (also) some upon him (the former) And wherever  
 a man has a right upon another the very same this another  
 must find somewhere (in some other person) And if it were  
 such that some one has rights binding on others and he has  
 none (for any one) upon himself (then thus) one sided right  
 is the sole and special privilege of God The Almighty Who  
 is (All pervading) Right in Himself This (one sided right)  
 is never intended for His creation for the reason that He has  
 (sole power) and authority over all His creation And His  
 orders and commandments have been passed upon each and  
 all with perfect and most impartial justice But that He has  
 made this (particular) right solely belonging to Himself bind-  
 ing upon His creation that they (all His creation) should all  
 (without a single exeption) submit to His will And (simply)  
 acting upon His own greatness and grace and over and above  
 this making an addition to it so profuse as it is worthy of  
 Him alone He has ordained double reward for their (said)  
 submission (to His will) After this out of His own (manifold)  
 Rights (upon His own creation) he has fixed some for some of  
 them (His creation) and some others upon some others (of  
 them) He has made (all) these (Rights and their distribu-  
 tion upon His creation) proportionately equal in their ways  
 and has (also) made some (of these) Rights in direct compari-  
 son with some (other of these Rights) reciprocally binding  
 upon one another Until and unless (therefore) a person does  
 fulfil his own obligations towards others he is never in his  
 rights to demand the fulfilment (by those others) of his own  
 Rights over them And (beware) the very greatest one of  
 these Rights is that of the Ruler over the ruled and vice-  
 versa These reciprocal rights have been made binding by



God, the Nourisher of the World This is an obligation which has been rendered indispensable by the Great God, the Almighty for all the Rulers and the Ruler over all the ruled and the rulers And these are the rights which have been ordained by God to be the source of an instrument for keeping the honour and dignity of their religion as well as a means for their (lasting) natural love and affection Now let it be clearly understood that the affairs of the ruled are never properly managed without (the help and brotherly love and sympathy of) the rulers and neither those of the rulers (can ever be properly carried on) without the good will and cooperation of the ruled Now at a time when the Rulers and the ruled have both discharged their said natural functions (towards each other) then is the time when right has prevailed upon the people High roads of religion are opened Justice and equity become the order of the day Nice and good religious rights and customs are rendered going on in their own ways Now with the prevalence of Right the affairs of the time have by themselves gained equilibrium Temptations for a lasting hold on wealth have been created and the desire so ardent of the enemies have (by this time) come to an end with a total disappointment And (conversely) at a time when the ruled (people) rebelling against him have gained an upper hand over their ruler or (on the other hand) the ruler has himself acted in a way cruelly towards the ruled then at this stage opinions and actions have become divergent signs of justice and cruelty have appeared Disorder and deceit have become rampant in religion High roads of religion have been left and forsaken People have become slaves of their own wish and desire and a free indulgence to them has been given vent to Law and order have received a set back Soul and spiritual diseases have made their appearance in an epidemic form With the stoppage of the working of grand Right and from the pursuit of a powerful wrong people have as it were become quite familiar and have not felt the least disinclination or dislike (for such a state of affairs) which are bound to eat at their roots) Now at this stage the good and pious slaves of God are in dishonour and disgrace The naughty and the wicked have gained the upper hand And Lo! God's revenge and punishment are advancing rapidly nearer and nearer towards his creation (for they have ignored

and place so highly put up before his mind (the signs of His greatness and grandeur have, as it were been engraved on his mind) it is his (this man's) Right that (each and) all except Allah (The Great God) must be lower and insignificant in his eyes (when a comparison can be made between the Creator and His creation) And this Right above all others is not binding on a person on whom God's grand gifts have been showered, on whom His choicest and best blessings and boons have been bestowed but that the Right of this real giver (of gift) has become too great and high upon him And this should (also) be borne in mind that the worst condition of rulers in the eyes (estimation) of the good and the pious slaves of God are those that would make the people think that the Rulers appreciate to assume an air of superiority over the ruled and that their affairs (in their dealings with the people) are based on pride and show Look here! I do really regard a thing, hateful to me, which would lead you to consider that I am fond of hearing my praise (and my worth) This must never, for a single moment, occur in your mind that I do so like to hear my praise (the idea is itself a hateful thing to me) Praise be to God that I am not such And taking it to be granted, that I appreciate this (that you go on praising me and I continue to like its hearing even in that case without the least shadow of doubt) I would have (after having weighted) my own insignificance and humility in the presence of (the height of power and greatness) of God, the Nourisher of the world refrained (totally) from it then and there For, the reason is

shape by my own self as well as the discharge of my responsibility to see that they (the rights and duties which they are for the people themselves to do and perform) are followed and fulfilled and acted upon by others. Keeping the above two fold object in view I have been constantly changing my soul to come out of itself and advance towards you and God. Now (please) do not speak before me in a manner you do in the presence of cruel kings. Do not for a moment seek protection of your life and soul at any time when you happen to be in my presence with words (of praise and flattery) with which such protection is sought before kings of pomp and fury. Do not (please) have a dealing with me by means of flattery, show and hypocrisy. Do not for a single moment think that I would feel the least burden or annoyance in the Right which will be spoken before me. Do never think thus too that I am after self aggrandizement and elevation. The reason is that any one whom a matter of Right is put before or a just cause is shown and these two things are repugnant to him then (as a matter of course) to act up to them will be still more repugnant to him. Therefore (you are distinctly advised) never (to) hesitate in giving me (your) just and sincere advice and in speaking out frankly (without the least cause of giving annoyance) about what is right. For I know too well that even my soul is not (perfectly) free (for after all I am also a man like unto you) from (the liability of an incursion of) errors neither my actions and doings are (quite) safe (with an attack) from them. But that God of the world has granted me protection and safety from such things over which He has more control than myself. Now (do also) remember this that I and you are slaves. We are both slaves of that (Great) God Nourisher of the world except whom there is none. We never have such an (unlimited) amount of control over our own life and soul as that He has (over them). He has outdriven us (driven us out and out) for such a (disgraceful) position (as ignorance) in which we existed and has (merely out of his unlimited grace and mercy) put us on such a (high) road (as knowledge) which leads us to become pious and good (and through this to eternal salvation). He has turned our darkness (ignorance) into light (knowledge) and has thus granted us sight and Insight instead of our blindness of Ignorance.

## HIS SERMON No 219.

### *Complaint against the Quraish.*

O God! I seek Thy help against the Quraish for they disregarded my relation with the Holy Prophet, insulted me and gathered together to fight against me for a right of which I was more deserving than they were. They said 'Verily this Caliphate is your right if you can take it. But it is proper that you should be deprived of it. Have patience in your adversities and misfortunes and die sadly and sorrowfully.' (Hearing these words) I considered over the situation but I found none excepting the Ahlul Bait my helpers against the enemy. However I did not like that they (the Progeny of the Holy Prophet) should be killed in fighting against the enemy. Now I closed my eyes to shed bitter tears. I bore all these misfortunes with great patience.

In the same sermon he says about those persons who attacked Basra —

They attacked the Public Treasury, the Governor, Officials and the inhabitants of Basra who were quite obedient to me and had taken the oath of allegiance to me. They dispersed them (from me). They attacked my followers. They killed one group of people with treachery and cunningness. The other group took up their swords and fought against the enemy desperately and became martyrs.

---

## HIS SERMON No 220

On the death of Talha and Abdur Rahman bin Atab Ibne Asid in the battle of Jamal

Abu Muhammad (Talha) died lonely in a foreign country. By God! I did not like that the Quraish should be killed in the open fields. But alas! the descendants of Abd Manaf treated me very cruelly, mercilessly and unjustly and the big persons of the Hedjaz deserted me which was below their dignity and so their necks were broken.

## HIS SERMON No. 221.

### In Praise of the Holy Prophet.

The Holy Prophet sharpened his wisdom and killed his passions. He was reduced to skeletons due to penance. He was pure and pious. A very shining and bright light showed him the straight path upon which he began to walk. He was taken to Babus Salam (Gate of Mercy) and Darul Iqamah. He reached the place of peace, safety and protection. God was pleased with his actions.

---

## HIS SERMON No. 222.

### Indifference to Death.

"Abundance diverts you, until you come to the graves. Nay! you shall soon know." .. The Holy Quran, Part XXX Ch CII 1 and 2

After reciting the above verse, the Amurul Momineen said —

It is a wonder that a man should be proud of a big family and his ancestral blood. Of course he is very foolish. He visits the graves and yet he is so indifferent to (death). He has a very difficult task before him. As a matter of fact, he is not one of those who remember death. He is proud of the places where his ancestors were killed. He is pleased with the big number of his relatives who were murdered. He wants to bring their dead bodies back from the graves. It is much better for him to take warnings from them rather than be proud of them. He is disgraced because he is proud of them. He shall be exalted if he takes warnings from them. He saw them with his blind eyes and they departed from them in extreme ignorance and folly.

You are trampling upon their skulls. You stand upon their corpses which are reduced to dust. You graze your cattle upon places which they left. You live in the houses

which they deserted Verily the days which are left between you and them (the period of time from their death to your death) shall weep over you Listen! The persons who have gone before you (died) are the *fore runners* and *path finders* of your destination (You will also die just as they have died) These were the persons of rank and position Some of them were kings and some of them were subjects But all of them died and they lie buried in graves The Earth ate up their flesh and sucked up their blood They are quite motionless in the graves They cannot be found if they are searched The troubles and misfortunes can no longer frighten them and make them sad They do not have any worldly ambitions now They lived together in this world but now they are scattered They loved one another but now they are separated They are dumb deaf and motionless It seems as if they were prepared for it beforehand They are such neighbours as never meet one another They are such friends as never see one another They have absolutely no brotherhood They live at one place yet they are in isolation and loneliness Day and night make no difference for them They saw the punishments of the next world with their own eyes and they found them more severe than they were afraid of them and they felt them more than they had imagined them Now rewards or punishments were fixed for them They cannot describe what they see with their eyes there Nothing is known about them But wise persons take warnings from them Although they do not speak with their tongues yet their conditions speak — 'Lo! Our beautiful faces are deformed Our soft bodies have perished We have put on tattered garments We lie in a very narrow place We have got the inheritance of wilderness Our silent houses in which we live are destroyed We have been living here for a long time We do not get rid of this wild and lonely place' If you can see them you will find that worms and insects have made holes in their ears They are quite deaf They have applied the collyrium of dust to their eyes Their tongues which were every eloquent are completely rotten Their hearts are quite dead All the limbs of their bodies are in a very bad condition They cannot protect themselves They cannot cry Verily if you can think of them, you will know that they cannot

in any way get rid of their misfortune and distress. The earth has eaten up so many beautiful persons who were born with silver spoons in their mouths, who were bred and brought up in ease and comfort, who passed even their time of sorrow in happiness and pleasures and who did not like to give up their pleasures. They were proud of their worldly achievements but the world was laughing at them for they were indifferent to the next world. All of a sudden misfortune befell them. The cruel Time shattered their powers. Death looked at them angrily. They were involved in difficulties and troubles of which they were ignorant. They fell victims to diseases. Physicians gave them medicines to cure them but their conditions deteriorated. The persons who came to see the patients consoled them (patients) and their relatives. They were passing through the agonies of deaths. They lost their senses. They could not speak. Of course the pangs of death are very severe. The agonies of death are indeed indescribable.

---

## HIS SERMON No. 223.

### Remembrance of God.

“Men whom neither merchandise nor selling diverts from the remembrance of Allah and the keeping up of prayer and the giving of poor rate” Part XVIII Ch XXIV 37 (The Holy Quran)

Verily the remembrance of God enlivens the hearts of the people. They get wisdom and guidance from it (the remembrance of God). After enmity they become obedient and submissive to God (if they remember Him). Between the intervals of the births of Prophets, there are persons with whom He tells His secrets. They tell the people of the rewards and punishments of God in the past. They tell the people of the greatness of God and frighten them. These persons are like the Khizars of wild places. They praise the people who use moderation in everything. They give them the glad tidings of salvation. They condemn those who go astray from the straight path. They frighten them of des-

truction. Due to their sterling qualities, they are like torches in darkness. Verily there are some persons who prefer the remembrance of God to worldly riches. The temptations of this world cannot prevent them from remembering God. They inform people (who are indifferent to the next world) of the prohibitions of God. They order people to be just and fair in their dealings and they themselves act upon this principle. They prevent people from bad actions and they themselves abstain from them. Although they live in this world yet they have cut off their connections with this world. It seems as if they are in the know of the secrets of the Day of Judgment and so they are informing the people of them. They see what other persons do not see, and hear what other persons do not hear. You will find in them the signs of guidance and torches in darkness if you see them (with your mental eyes) scanning their actions, good or bad, and weeping and lamenting over their commissions and omissions before God. On such occasions angels gather round them, and they receive consolation from God. The doors of the Heaven are opened for them. God is pleased with their actions. He hath exalted their positions. These persons repent for their sins before God. They are grateful to Him for His favours. They are insignificant before His Greatness and Grandeur. The long period of sufferings has badly wounded their hearts. Their eyes are wounded due to constant weeping. They feel inclined to obey the commandments of God. They beg from God Whose generosity is not limited and from Whose door no one returns despondent and disappointed. You must also scan your actions for you shall have to render your account on the Day of Reckoning.

---

### HIS SERMON No. 224.

#### On the Weakness of the Man

"O Man! What has beguiled you from your Lord, the Gracious One." Part XXX: Ch. LXXXII: 6. (The Holy Quran).

The man is very weak and insignificant. God asks him this question. He falls an easy prey to the temptations of



this world He is cruel to his conscience because of his ignorance O man! What made you proud that you disobey the orders of God? What made you so bold and brave that you commit sins? What made you like the destruction of your soul? Is there no remedy for your disease? Will you not get up from your sleep? Have you no mercy over your soul? When you see any person sitting in the blinding heat of the sun, you take pity on him and give him protection. When you see any person weeping and crying from pain in his body, you are moved to pity and you weep for him But what made you patient over your own pain and sufferings? You do not weep for yourself, although you should love yourself more than others Alas! Why are you not afraid of the punishments of God although you are involved in sins and evils? Now you should get rid of your lethargy, indolence and the weakness of your heart by perseverance and constant efforts Who made you so much indifferent to the next world? Obey the orders of the Almighty God Remember Him Just imagine that although you are turning your face against Him, yet He is kind to you, He invites you to forgiveness, He hides your sins because of His favours Verily God is the Exalted and the High He is the Almighty and the All powerful He is so kind and merciful to you to see your weakness but you commit sins He showers His favours upon you constantly He never deprived you of His blessings He conceals your sins He protects you from so many troubles. Now just imagine! If you had the powers of God, you would have been the first person to punish yourself for your bad actions It is surprising that despite His favours you are disobedient to Him I tell you the truth that the world did not make you proud but you have fallen an easy victim to the temptations of this world It (this world) gives you clear warnings but you do not pay any heed to them Alas! you blame the person who speaks the truth and gives you sound advice You call him a liar and imposter If you consider over the deserted cities and depopulated buildings, you shall get warnings from them for this world They shall be very good guides for you They shall remind you of God They shall prevent you from evils Really the house of the man who does not make any house here is very good Verily blessed are they on the Day of Judgment who refrain from the

(poor rate), charity or remuneration for any work which I have done for you ? And all these things are illegal for the Ahlul But ' He said It is nothing but a gift I said, ' O Aqeel ! Curse on you ! Have you come here to deceive me ? Are you mad ? Are you talking nonsense ? By God ! If all the seven worlds under the sky are bestowed upon me as a remuneration for usurping a grain of barley from an ant against the wishes of God I will not do it Verily I have less regard for your world than an ant has regard for the husk of a barley grain which it keeps in its mouth Ali has nothing to do with a thing which is perishable and destructible We seek the protection and help of God from evils and follies '

---

## HIS SERMON No 226

### A Prayer

O God ! Protect my honour by wealth ! Do not reduce me to abject poverty lest I should beg my livelihood from thee, and lest I should involve the favours of those who are the worst people and lest I should praise those who give me any thing and blame those who do not give me anything although it is Thou who bestoweth any thing upon a person if Thou likest and doth not bestow any thing upon a person if Thou doth not like

---

## HIS SERMON No 227.

### On the Evils of this World

This world is a house surrounded by misfortunes It is notorious for faithlessness It is subject to constant changes The persons who come here or go from here are never safe It is a very bad place Its pleasures are unpleasant There is absolutely no peace and safety here The people are the targets of this world It showers its arrows upon them and destroys them O People of God ! Beware ! In this world, you stand upon a path from which numberless persons have

passed away in the past They lived here for a longer time than you Their houses were more populated than yours and they were much further away from the Day of Resurrection than you All of a sudden their conditions were changed Their days of pride and prosperity were gone Their bodies became rotten Their houses were deserted They had to change their big, spacious and fortified buildings with soft beds for narrow dark and dreary graves with hard stones Their graves are very near from one another, but they do not love one another They do not mix with one another as neighbours although they are so near They cannot see one another because their bodies are completely rotten and hard stones and earth have eaten them You are also going to have the same fate You shall have to experience the horrors and punishments of the graves What will be your ultimate fate when you will be taken out of the graves ?

‘ There shall every soul become acquainted with what it sent before, and they shall be brought back to Allah, their true Patron, and what they devised shall escape from them ’  
Part XI Ch 10 30 (The Holy Quran )

---

## HIS SERMON No. 223.

### A Prayer.

O God ! Thou art the most familiar with the persons who depend upon Thee ! Thou art their best supporter Thou seest their hearts Thou knowest their secrets All things which they think and do are revealed to Thee The only ambition which they have is to see Thee If Thy separation perplexes them, they remember Thee If misfortunes and troubles befall them, they seek Thy protection for they fully understand that Thou art the master of everything and whatever happens, happens due to Thy orders O God ! If I am perplexed and confounded and fail to express before Thee, lead me and guide me There is no trouble for Thee in guiding and helping me O God ! Forgive and forget my omissions and commissions and save me from rendering my account before Thee

## HIS SERMON No 229

### On the Second Caliph

May God protect the people of those cities of that person !  
He put crooked thing straight He cured disease and  
established the path of the Prophet He left sedition He  
died in piety He had the little defects He did the right  
work He abstained from evils He followed the com-  
mandments of God He was afraid of God When he died,  
people were left on different paths , so the misguided people  
could not get guidance and the people on the straight path  
were not certain whether or not they were on the straight and  
right path

---

## HIS SERMON No. 230.

### On the Oath of Allegiance to his Caliphate

You spread my hand for taking the oath of allegiance  
but I withdrew it You pulled my hand but I kept it under  
my control You gathered round me in large numbers and  
began to push one another (to reach me) just as the thirsty  
camels gather together near some stream and push one another  
In that wild rush, the laces of my shoes were broken and the  
sheet fell off from my shoulders, and the weak and old persons  
were crushed There was so much rejoicing on the occasion  
of this oath of allegiance to me that young persons enjoyed  
this huge gathering but old persons fell down on the way,  
patients suffered much while coming to me and even girls  
removed their veils for the oath of allegiance

---

## HIS SERMON No. 231.

### On Piety and the Evils of the World.

Verily the fear of God is the key of the door of truth and  
virtue It is a provision for the next world It gives a person  
freedom from every kind of slavery and saves him from every  
destruction A man achieves his aim due to this piety He  
gets salvation from every punishment He gets blessings of

different kinds So be virtuous for virtues exalt you You can gain by repentance and penitence Prayers are heard (accepted) Now the man is in ease and comfort (he enjoys sound health and is not suffering the pangs of death) and the pen runs (the angels write the good and bad actions of a man) Make haste to do good deeds for your life is short Disease shall prevent you from doing good deeds and death shall capture you and take you away Verily Death puts an end to all your pleasures and enjoyments It removes you from your cherished goal It comes to you but not as a friend It is your companion but you cannot overcome it It is a murderer on which you cannot take revenge Its ropes have tied you Its troubles have surrounded you It has shot its arrows upon you It has made you the target Its punishment is very severe for you It is your constant enemy It is very near from you Very soon the darkness of its angry eye brow, the flames of the fires of its diseases, its hardships and tortures its agonies and pains shall attack you It will seem that it attacked you all of a sudden It made your secret keepers quiet It dispersed your helpers It destroyed you It depopulated your house It instigated your heirs to divide your inheritance A person who cannot sympathize with you in any way has inherited your property He does not weep over your death In these circumstances it is incumbent upon you to try your level best to make provision for the next world Be careful lest the world should deceive you as it deceived the people in the past who lived before you Those were the people who had milked this world and who were men of rank and position Now when they opened their eyes, they saw that the graves were their lodgings and their heirs had inherited their properties They do not know who come to them They do not care for those who weep for them They do not respond to those who call them Abstain from this world It is very cunning It deceives people It gives them something and then it takes it from them Its pleasures are not everlasting Its sorrows come in quick succession Its troubles never subside

He says about the pious people —

Although they (the pious people) live in this world, yet they are unfit to live here They live here in such a way as

if they do not belong to this world They have no connection with this world Whatever they do they do for the next world They hanker after death of which people are generally afraid Their bodies are moving with those in paradise They see that the people in general attach much importance to their physical deaths but have little regard for their spiritual deaths

---

### HIS SERMON No 232

Delivered at Zi-Qar near Basra

The Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace be on him and his descendants) revealed the thing for which he was appointed He gave the message of God to the people in a very nice way So God united those people who were divided and disunited The persons who were closely related with one another but who were at daggers drawn with one another due to enmity and malice were united and made to love one another by God

---

### HIS SERMON No 233

On Abdullah Ibne Zama

(Abdullah bin Zama was one of his supporters During his caliphate he requested him to give him some money Thereupon he said —)

The public treasury is meant neither for me nor you It is nothing but the booty of the Muslims It is due to their drawn swords If you had taken part in the war with them, you would have also got your share But you would not do it, therefore you have no right in it

---

### HIS SERMON No 234

On the Ahlul-Bait

Beware! The tongue is a limb of the body of a man If a man indulges in prohibitions and other pleasures the tongue

*does not help him, but if a man has a good nature, the tongue never fails him* We, the Ahlul Bait, are the Kings of discourse We know its rules and grammar Its branches laden with sweet fruits overshadow us May God have mercy on you! Know it well that you live in an age when there are only a few persons to speak the truth The followers of Truth are in disgrace The people of this age have fallen easy victims to evils and sins They have no regard for prohibitions The youths of this age are ill natured The old people are sinful The learned persons are hypocrites There is no sincerity in the hearts of the students for learning They are also hypocrites The young people do not respect the old ones The rich persons do not give any thing to the poor persons in charity

---

### HIS SERMON No 235

#### On the Disunity of the People

Verily the divers natures of the people have divided and disunited them They are made of different kinds of earth They are near or distant from one another according to the natures of the soil of which they are made Now there are some persons who are beautiful and handsome but they are foolish There are some persons of tall statures but they are cowardly There are some persons who are virtuous and pious but they look ugly There are some persons who are lean and thin and have short statures but they can bear hardships and sufferings patiently There are some persons who are famous for their good nature and people like it, but they (people) do not like their formality and artificiality There are some persons who are perplexed and confounded but they have sharp tongues and they are impetuous by nature

---

### HIS SERMON No 236

#### On the Death of the Holy Prophet.

May my parents be sacrificed for you! Your death has put an end to Prophethood, revelations and the messages

from the sky which had not been done due to the deaths of others in the past. Your death has caused a general sorrow. People are very much grieved at your death. If you had not ordered us to have patience, and had not prohibited us from weeping and crying, we would have wept bitterly. It is an eternal grief but alas! Death is inevitable, and unavoidable. None can escape it. Mention us also before God. Remember us. Do not forget us.

---

### **HIS SERMON No. 237.**

**On the Migration of the Holy Prophet from Mecca to Medina.**

I followed in the footsteps of the Holy Prophet. I started in search of him. I enquired of his welfare at every stage. I found him at Urj.

---

### **HIS SERMON No. 238.**

**An Advice to the People.**

Do good deeds and offer your prayers, for now you are in a position to do them, the book of writing your actions is still open and the bed of repentance is spread. The persons who turn against truth are invited to truth and there is still time for the sinful persons for repentance and penitence. Do good deeds before you die, the days of your life pass away, the door of repentance is closed and the angels go away to the sky with your actions. If a man takes advantage of his life and makes provision for the next world, and considers this life to be preparatory for the eternal and everlasting life, he fears God and keeps his passions under his control. He follows the commandments of God and abstains from His prohibitions.

---

### **HIS SERMON No. 239.**

**On the Censure of the Arbitrators (Amr Ibnul As and Abu Musa Asha'ri) and the Syrians.**

They are tyrants They are mean and wicked. They are the slaves of the mean and base people. They gathered



together from all sides and created factions and dissensions They deserve to be taught and made to understand the truth They are in need of careful supervision and guidance They do not belong to the Muhajireen and the Ansar They are not of those persons who had embraced Islam in Medina before the migration of the Holy Prophet and who had built a mosque there Beware! They selected Amr Ibnul As to be their representative for a thing which they liked most and you selected Abu Musa Ashari to be your representative for a thing which you hated most You had made a promise with Abdullah Ibne Qais (Abu Musa Ashari) only a few days ago You had met him (on the occasion of the battle of Jamal) and he said It shall create seditions and factions Cut off your arrows Put your swords into your sheaths If he was honest in his saying he committed a sin in accompanying us But if he was a liar his dishonesty is proved However, disregard the decision of the arbitration consisting of Abdullah Ibne Abbas and Amr Ibnul As Take advantage of this opportunity Do you not see your forts over which the enemies are showering their arrows?

---

### **HIS SERMON No 240**

#### **On the Ahlul-Bait**

*(The Progeny of the Holy Prophet)*

They (the Ahlul Bait) are the life of learning They are death (kill) to ignorance Their patience informs you of their depth of knowledge Their silence is a tangible proof of their right and correct speech They never oppose Truth They are the pillars of Islam They revealed Truth and removed falsehood and ignorance They understand the real spirit and significance of Islam

---

### **HIS SERMON No 241**

*(When Hazrat Usman the Third Caliph was besieged he sent Abdullah bin Abbas to request Hazrat Ali to leave Madina for Yanba. Thereupon he said —)*

O Ibne Abbas! Usman wants to make me the camel to carry water in sheep skins He called me in Madina and now he tells me to go out By God! I did away with the siege of the insurgents but now there is danger lest I should be accused

---

## HIS SERMON No. 242.

### Appeal for Jihad.

God wants you to show your gratitude to Him for the blessings which He has conferred upon you He is to give His kingdom to you He is about to give you an opportunity so that you may try to surpass one another in reaching Paradise Tie the knots of your under garments tightly Stop the excess in eating and drinking, for there is enmity between firm determinations and happy entertainments The nocturnal sound sleep breaks firm determinations and courage

---

### The Sayings of Hazrat Ali.

During the time of sedition be like the young one of a camel upon which neither any one can ride nor can it be milked

He who is greedy is disgraced

Avarice diminishes one's dignity without increasing one's future

The greedy are the slaves of their desires

Disappointment goes with avarice

A wise person becomes dumb in his needs

A beggar is like a poor traveller even in his own city.

To abstain from knowledge and art is a disease

Patience is courage

Piety is wealth

The best friend is resignation to God  
The sum of excellency is knowledge  
Nothing is more ornamental than courtesy  
The heart of a wise man is the box of his secrets  
If a man keeps friendship with people, his faults are concealed

Charity earns praise  
There can be no charity with an empty pocket

When the world favours any person, his defects seem to be virtues, and when it turns its face against him, his virtues become defects

Live in this world in such a way that if you die people may weep over you, and if you are alive, they may feel *inclined to move in your company*

How excellent is mercy enjoined with might !  
Be grateful to God even for little blessings

He who is not helped by his relatives and friends is helped by distant peoples

Every person upon whom misfortune falls is not sinful  
Man proposes and God disposes  
Your desire is your most inveterate enemy

Pardon the faults of the courteous and civil persons for God pardons their faults

The subjects of a cruel and dreadful king suffer loss

The days of your life pass away like clouds, so do good deeds during your life time

We have a right in this property of the Muslims. If we get it, we are strong, but if we do not get it, we are like riders on camels although we eat to our fill at night

He who is slow to do good deeds does not attain greatness

The atonement of great sins is to help the poor and the distressed and to make them happy

O son of Adam ! Fear God when He constantly confers blessings upon you

Love and enmity cannot be hidden in the hearts , they express themselves Those who walk on the surface of the earth shall one day be interred in it

Fear God for He has concealed your sins as if He has forgiven them

Patience, belief, justice and Jihad are the four pillars of faith Desire fear and piety are the branches of patience

He who is fond of Paradise forgets the pleasures of this world He who is afraid of the fire of Hell abstains from the prohibitions of God The worldly troubles become easy for him who refrains from worldly gains He who waits for death does good deeds

There are four pillars of Heathenism—(1) to hide Truth (2) to fight against Truth (3) to go astray from Truth (4) to be the enemy of Truth He who conceals Truth shall be lost in ignorance He who fights against Truth with ignorance shall always be blind of Truth (He shall never see Truth) He who goes astray from Truth shall find pleasures in evils and shall hate virtues He who opposes Truth shall be ultimately surrounded by difficulties and misfortunes

There are four pillars of doubts—(1) to fight (2) to fear (3) to be worried (4) to be downcast He who quarrels shall never get happiness He who is afraid of everything in front of him shall retrace his steps He who is sceptic and worried shall be trampled down upon by the Satan He who is despondent and disappointed shall perish

A virtuous man is better than virtue A vicious person is worse than vice Be generous but do not be extravagant

Give alms according to your means and do not keep your family in abject poverty

✓ To give up ambitions is the best contentment

He who increases his ambitions spoils his good actions

The following advice was given to Hazrat Imam Hasan

Be wise for it shall make you self sufficient There is no pain more troublesome than ignorance Pride forfeits praise Humility is one of the nest spread by real greatness

O Son Refrain from the friendship of a fool for he intends to benefit you but really he harms you

✓ Refrain from a friendship of a miser for he shall desert you in your needs

Be afraid of friendship of a irreligious person for he shall sell for a small gain

Do not make friendship with a liar for friendship is impossible with a liar Misrepresentation spoils narration Lying spoils news

The tongue of a wise man is behind his heart whereas the heart of a fool is behind his tongue

Disease wastes away the sins of a man

He quotes a Saying of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace of God be upon him and his descendants)

O All the Momin shall not be your enemy and the hypocrite shall not be your friend

The worth of a man depends upon his courage Truth is his divine tongue

Be afraid of a generous person when he is hungry

Be afraid of a miser when he has a lot of money Wealth hides the defects of a man

How excellent is mercy conjoined with power.  
How mean is punishment inspite of apologies  
He is really generous who gives before he is asked.  
It is wisdom which makes a man self sufficient.  
There is no disease more hopeless than want of wisdom.  
There is no better legacy than courtsey.  
Hold consultation before you do anything.

Know that resignation is the first step in true religion and  
sincerity its end.

With patience misfortunes are no misfortunes.  
Wealth is the root of all diseases.  
He who frightens you of any evil invites you to good.

The tongue is like a wild beast. If it is not checked it  
shall harm others.

The woman is like a scorpion. Her sting is pleasant and  
sweet.

The people of the world are like riders who sleep on their  
journey.

It is better to die than to beg.

Do not feel ashamed even if you have a little to give in  
charity, for it is better to give a beggar something though it  
may be very little rather than to disappoint him.

To refrain from prohibitions is the ornament of the needy.  
To be grateful to God is the decoration of the rich

Do not think how your ambitions were realised in the  
past.

The ignorant man is the loser in whatever condition he  
may be.

As a man's wisdom increases, so his words decrease.  
Time disappoints people and brings them near death.

It is better for an Indian to set his own example to the people rather than to give precepts

Every breath of a man brings him nearer to Death.

Everything in this world is perishable.

Whatever is fated must come to pass.

The love of the world is the root of all troubles

This world is the shop of misery. The divorce of the world is the marriage settlement of the paradise.

Live with your body in this world and with your faith and work for the next.

*Acquire knowledge whenever you may get. When a hypocrite gets a wisdom it gives him satisfaction.*

Wisdom is a lost property of the Momin. Acquire it even if you get it from a hypocrite.

The worth of a man depends upon his good actions. Expect nothing from any person but from God.

Be afraid of your sins only.

The chief of wisdom is to admit one's own ignorance.

Never be ashamed of admitting your ignorance.

A man should not feel ashamed of acquiring what he does not know.

Patience is the fruit of Faith.

To fight for the cause of God (Jihad) has...unique advantages.

The opinion of the old person is better than the strength of a young boy.

I wonder at the man who is despondent of the mercy of God, although He has allowed him to repent for his sins

He is the true learned man who does not make any one despondent of the mercy of God.

Pray to God to protect you from the misguided people, your wealth and your children are trials for you

The increase of your wealth and children is of little value but the increase of your knowledge and virtues is really good

If you do good deeds, be grateful to God, but if you commit sins, repent for them

Sinners is a disease, repentance is the medicine, and abstaining from it is its cure

Verily the friend of Muhammad (Peace be on him and his descendants) is he who obeys the commandments of God and abstains from His prohibition though he may not be his relative

It is better to sleep with a strong faith in God rather than to offer prayer in scepticism

When you hear any tradition of the Holy Prophet remember it, understand it and act upon it

### He who praises you murders you

A time is coming when the companions of the kings will be only bad persons who will be prosperous and happy, whereas the good and just persons shall be disgraced and humiliated

To assist the wrong is to oppress the right

Cruelty to the distressed is the worst cruelty

There is enmity between this world and the next world He who is the friend of this world is the enemy of the next world and he who is the enemy of the next world is the friend of this world You cannot marry both these worlds and enjoy their pleasures

Blessed are those persons who are indifferent to this world



Blessed are they who are fond of the next world

Do not neglect your prayers which are obligatory upon you

Do not trespass the limits    Abstain from prohibitions  
Moderation is the path of safety

Very often ignorance ruins a learned person    Although he understands his position    yet his knowledge does not benefit him

The greatness of a man depends upon his heart which is but a small piece of flesh

The greedy are the slaves of their desires

Disappointment goes with avarice

Yielding to anger means shame and sin

When fortune smiles upon a man he generally forgets God

If a man is in peace and prosperity, he generally becomes proud

If a man weeps and cries in misfortune, he is disgraced

We the true Imams use moderation in everything

The orders of God can be maintained and enforced only by that person who is sympathetic towards the people but who must not be under their control

He who loves the Ahlul Bait must be ready to put on the dress of poverty

There is nothing more beneficial than wisdom

Pride impedes progress and mars greatness

None is more respectable than a pious man

Let good deeds be your companions and desires be your enemies

Courtesy is the best inheritance    When God favours any of His servants he engages him in His love

Abstinence from prohibitions is the best piety

It is very good if a man does not do a doubtful thing

There is no knowledge better than reflection and meditation

There is no prayer better than the discharge of your obligations

There is no faith better than patience and shame

There is no greatness better than modesty and humility

There is no help stronger than consultation

Two groups of people shall perish—those who over-estimate me and those who under estimate me

The waste of time involves a man in difficulties

The world is like a snake which is very soft if it is touched but which is very poisonous and deadly

The ignorant person likes it but the wise person refrains from it

Death is separation from the perishable and merging in the imperishable

People are asleep when alive, they are only awake when they are dead

The chief aim of Islam is resignation to God. It ordains to have complete and firm faith in one God and the Holy Prophet Muhammad and to follow strictly the commands and prohibitions of God

The miser's wealth goes either to his heirs or to the wind. None is more solitary than a miser

A miser is only a treasure for his heirs

To be stingy with what is in hand is to distrust God

Stinginess defames moderation

Money does not benefit its possessor except when he parts with it

The short coffers of the charitable man are preferable to the abundance of the miser

I wonder at the man who is sceptic about the existence of God although he sees His creation

I pity the man who has forgotten Death although he sees persons dying daily

The more you wonder at the man who does not believe in the next world, the less it is

The greatest of follies is to love this world and forget the next world

The person who does not do good deeds and does not offer his prayers will be involved in difficulties and misfortunes

Humanity is of two kinds, those who hope in vain and those who gain to be discontented

When we do not hope, we do not fret

One who understands the greatness of God looks down upon this world

Verily piety is the best provision for the next world

No shelter is safer than piety

Piety is the best reformer of Religion

Piety is the safest refuge

The walks of those who have gone before you are instructive to those who follow

There are two kinds of persons—those who sell themselves for this world and as such they perish and those who buy

next world and as such they are free from the punishments of the next world.

A friend in need is a friend indeed.

Pray to God and He shall accept your prayers.

Confession is the best saviour.

There is no redeemer better than repentance.

Prosperity consists not in the increase of money and children but in the growth of virtue and development of patience.

Be grateful to God and He will make you happy and prosperous.

The prayer of every pious person brings him near to God.

Pilgrimage to the Holy Kaba (Haj) is the Jihad (religious war) of every weak person.

Fasting is the Zakat (poor-rate) of the body.

The Jihad of a woman is to please her husband.

Let a fortification of alms protect your property.

Money does not benefit its owner except when he parts with it.

The best investment is that with which duties are discharged.

God helps a man according to his needs and capacity.

One who uses moderation in everything never becomes poor.

The death of children is due to the fact that though a man is rich, he does not spend money in the way of God.

To make friendship with people is half-wisdom.

Sorrow makes a man old before time.

In over whelming difficulties a man's greatness is disclosed

If a person loses his patience in troubles, he loses his reward

Fasting of mind is to abstain from all evil temptations  
There are persons whose fastings do not help them    There  
are persons whose prayers do not help them

Protect your property by paying poor rate

Remove your troubles by prayers

There are three kinds of people—those who know God, those who are the seekers of Truth, those who are neither learned nor seekers of Truth. The people of the last group are very base and mean. They follow any leader blindly like sheep.

Knowledge is better than wealth for you have to protect wealth whereas knowledge protects you.

Wealth decreases by spending whereas the more you spend knowledge, the more it will increase. To receive knowledge is a part and parcel of faith. The seeker of knowledge is rewarded. People obey God because of knowledge. Knowledge gives life to the soul. It kills ignorance.

Love of wealth fosters aspirations and spoils virtue.

A man is hidden behind his own tongue

He who does not recognize himself perishes.

Do not expect any reward unless you do good deeds.

There are some persons who only talk of piety but they indulge in worldly pleasures. They prevent others from loving this world but they themselves love this world too much.

Every soul shall taste of death.

Every fortunate person shall become unfortunate.

A patient person sooner or later, shall achieve his aim.

If a man is pleased and satisfied with the actions of an organization (party) he is one of them

Fear of God is the final result of knowledge  
Poverty sometimes kills the conscience of a man  
Do not obey any person in any illegal things

The person who interferes with an affair of which he is incapable should be condemned

Pride impedes prosperity.  
Death is at hand and the worldly life is very short

The Day of Judgment will be pleasant for the person who will be learned It shall be dark and unpleasant for the ignorant

Abstinence from sins is better than repentance  
People are enemies of what they are ignorant  
He who fights for God only is strong and powerful  
Heart is the instrument of honesty  
Doubt is the outcome of ignorance

An adviser devoid of virtue is like a bow without its string

Humility inspite of position is like mercy inspite of power  
(Humility is to High Position what Mercy is to Power )

Carnel appetites are nets spread by the Devil

God hastens the fall of tyrants He who turns against Truth is lost

If a man has no patience he perishes

Verily men are the targets in this world upon which the arrows of death fall

Speech is like medicine A small doze of it cures the patient but the excess of it kills him

The less you say the more you will be certified

The power of forbearing anger is superior to that of taking revenge

If common people are united they can defeat their enemy but if they disperse they are not recognized

There are two angels with every person They protect him in his lifetime but when death overtakes him they do not interfere with it God loves those persons who are grateful to Him

To teach is to learn

Uneasiness of mind is more painful than patient resignation

Generosity protects honour

Forgiveness keeps the fools quiet To forgive your enemy is the poor rate of your victory

*Forgive and forget the treachery of the enemy*

He who depends upon his opinion perishes

To take consultation is the fountain of guidance

Patience overcomes misfortunes

Avarice diminishes one's dignity without increasing one's fortune There are many wise persons who are the victims of fools

Experience is a very good teacher

Never tell your secrets to a person who is displeased with you

One who is generous has many friends

Charity earns praise

A man is known in distress

Do not make friendship with a jealous person

To oppress people is the worst provision for the next world

A generous man does not remember the defects of other persons.

Humility advertises greatness.

People do not see the defects of a person who is humble and meek.

Be silent and be safe.

Be just and you shall rule.

Contentment is an incomparable treasure.

Enmity is the occupation of fools.

Association with a fool is a torture to the soul.

Moderation is half economy.

Pity the jealous people

Disappointment goes with avarice.

Jealousy devours virtue as fire devours wood.

If a person goes to a rich man hoping to get something from him, he loses two-thirds of his faith.

A man who loves this world shall be always sad, greedy and disappointed.

If a man is contented, he is a king.

The contented alone live in peace.

Courtesy costs nothing but buys everything.

Contentment is piety.

The crown of the king is his own justice.

When any man hopes well of you, do not disappoint him.

Pride, cowardice and miserliness are bad for men but good for women

A wise man does the right thing at the right time, in a right way.

This world is worse than the bone of a pig which is in the hand of a leper.



There are three groups of people —(1) Some persons offer their prayers for rewards Such prayers are business-like (2) Some persons are afraid of God, so they offer their prayers Such prayers are the prayers of slaves (3) Some persons pray to God out of gratitude Such prayers are the prayers of free persons

Fear God, however little it may

If you give lengthy answers to questions, you are liable to commit mistakes

If you are grateful to God for His blessings, He will increase them, *but to be ungrateful is to stop gifts*

If a person considers you to be good, try to be good

Namaz (Prayer) makes a man humble Fasting tests the sincerity of a man

Jihad is ordained for the victory of Islam

The commandments of God are meant to reform the people

The Prohibitions are meant for checking the fools from sins

Wine is prohibited because its use makes a man lose his sense

A man becomes pious if he abstains from stealing

If a man abstains from adultery, he protects his progeny (the purity of the blood of his family)

Sodomy is prohibited for the increase of human beings

If a man is not jealous, he will be healthy

Do not make provision for tomorrow for God will give you food

Treat your friend kindly lest he should become your enemy some day ; treat your enemy kindly so that he should become your friend some day.

What is fated must come to pass.

God gives time to every sinner.

Verily there is destruction for enmity.

Refrain from women as far as possible.

Frequent remembrance of death decreases one's worldly desires

When you are quite certain of your death, do good deeds.

Death mocks at aspirations.

Though naked and starving, the contented are the most happy.

Avarice leads to unscrupulous means.

Hypocrisy is very bad.

Offer your prayers willingly and cheerfully.

The chief aim of knowledge is virtue.

The Best knowledge is what benefits its possessor.

The Amirul Momineen said about Fate, "It is a dark path. Do not walk upon it. It is a deep ocean. Do not plunge into it. It is a secret of God. Do not try to find it out."

O God! Bless one whose chief treasury is hope and whose weapons are tears.

O God! Thou art too great to destroy one whom Thou hast brought up.

Do not move in the company of fools.

Every look supplies a lesson.

The dead supply lessons for the living

The strongest of men is he who subdues his passions.

He who loves God fights shy of people.

None who makes a correct self estimation is ever lost.

This world is a poison, only those ignorant of it swallow it.

No sin can make me sad if I get time to offer two rakat  
Namaz after it

✓ Obedience to women is the worst ignorance  
With virtue one can enslave the free  
It is easier to be virtuous than to be vicious  
Your letter is much better than your verbal message  
The men are the sons of this world  
A high minded and bashful man never commits adultery

✓ A man sleeps on the death of his son but he does not  
sleep on the loss of his property

The weapon of jealousy is criticism  
He who bears tales to you certainly bears tales about you  
*Excessive laughter deadens the minds*

A man can never be a true Muslim unless he has full  
confidence in God

*Tyranny is the fore runner of ruin*  
A tyrant's success is his moral defeat

Oppression of orphans and widows brings down d sease  
and loss of blessing

Happy is he who conquers himself

✓ Fight against self is the greatest of all fights  
The world is bitter with all its sweetness

✓ The Amirul Momineen said to his son Muhammad Hana-  
fiya I am afraid of your object poverty Seek the protection  
of God from it

Extreme poverty is not good

He who teaches me a letter binds me with a fetter  
Religion is a stove and knowledge the route to it

In order to be successful obey knowledge and disobey  
ignorance

Many quote knowledge but few note in mind

The most complete gift of God is life based on knowledge

The innumerable fools have made the learned very scarce

Abstain from sins and disobedience even in solitude

If a man succeeds with tyranny, he is really defeated

The king is the inspector of the land of God

A Muslim looks happy and cheerful His sorrow is hidden He is large hearted He has no worldly ambition He hates ostentation and hypocrisy

Brothers enhance our pleasure and sooth our pains

Giving after refusal is more pleasing than refusal after giving

Do not mind the speaker but mind the speech

Avoiding sin is better than practising virtue

To loosen the reins of one's desires is to hasten one's death

Actions are the outcome of intentions

Without sincerity all works are valueless

Many work for what will ruin them

The greatness of a beggar lies in not begging

The ornament of a wealthy man is to be grateful to God

Forgiving is the crown of greatness

Mercy graces power

The Day of Judgment shall be very painful to the cruel persons

Nothing is more detrimental to religion than avarice  
Greed mars justice

Contentment is an everlasting honour

Do not spoil your honour by begging

To praise a man more than he deserves is flattery

The worst sin is that which a man considers easy

The conjecture of a wise man is more correct than the conviction of a fool

He who finds fault with himself is safe from finding fault with others

He who is satisfied and contented shall never be sad

Greatness lies in the nobility of aspiration and not in the decaying bones of ancestors

He who draws the swords of rebellion is killed

He who goes to notorious places is defamed

Contentment is a wealth which is not subject to decay and destruction

He who always remembers death is satisfied with a little worldly wealth

Love of wealth fosters aspirations and spoils virtue

Let your aspirations be for the next world and you will be reformed

People are more like the times they live in than they are like their forefathers

One's obedience to God is proportionate to one's wisdom

The wise aim at perfection

The foolish aim at wealth

To respect the learned is to respect God

The learned are the living ones in the dead mass of ignorance

The learned man understands the ignorant for he was once ignorant himself

A true Momin takes warning from this world He takes his livelihood according to his needs

✓ Every arrow does not hit the mark ; nor is every prayer granted

O' Lord: I approach Thee through remembrance of Thee.

Avarice, pride and envy are the root causes of all troubles.  
He is really wise whose action attests to his words.

To separate from things of time and to connect self with things of eternity is the highest wisdom.

The tongue of the wise man is in his own mind. (The wise man speaks in his mind or the wise thinks much and speaks little)

A check upon the tongue is better than a check upon the stomach.

He who does not control his tongue shall be sorry.

Miserliness is the cause of all evils.

Charity would not be guided by fear and hope.

Real charity relieves the whole distress.

You must get whatever is allotted for you.

Beware of the tongue for it is an arrow that often goes wrong.

A sweet tongue begets many friends.

The mind of the fool is behind his own tongue. (The fool speaks before he thinks).

A man's tongue is his own balance.

Truth is the divine tongue.

Aspirations know no bounds.

Trust in God is the best founded aspiration.

The highest aspiration of animals is to satisfy their stomachs.

The highest aspiration of wild beasts is to be oppressive over others.

✓ The highest aspiration of women is to give charm to this worldly life and to create mischief in it.

The highest aspiration of Ah is to guide the world

A man's worth depends upon the nobility of aspirations

Do not be a coward even if death comes to you Do not seek the help of any person even if you are in great distress

If you act in accordance with the wishes of the people, you are safe

Your separate existence (from Divinity) is an unpardonable sin

Fear none but your sins

Old age is a true adviser, who points out your mistakes

*This world is a bridge leading to the next*

Sin spoils service of God

Admonition in public is fruitless

Be sincere in your works, for Divine test is very keen

Want of sincerity spoils good deeds

The hardest part of an action is to secure the purity of the motive

Little with care is more lasting than much with extravagance

Lying spoils news

Untruthfulness and hypocrisy degrades morality

Courtesy is the best inheritance

One's behaviour is the index of one's mind

Care for parents is the foremost duty.

Take care of your parents, and your children will take care of you

Pride forfeits praise

Generosity earns praise

Envy robs a man of his happiness

There is no sincerity in a backbiter

He who listens to backbiting is a backbiter himself

To fulfil promises is the highest form of integrity.

Truth means conformity of speech with the Divine mode of working.

A modest smile is the best laughter.

✓ Excessive laughter damages the respectability of a person.

Ostentation spoils worship.

Experience is a sufficient teacher.

✓ Boasting issues from small minds.

To fight against one's own desires is the highest wisdom.

Divine fortification protects the country of a just king.

Greed spoils justice.

The chief aim of wisdom is to admit one's own ignorance.

He is truly ignorant who ignores self value.

✓ The boon of the ignorant is like a garden on a dung hill.

Fall in with virtues and fall out with desires

Tyranny leads to moral cowardice.

To enjoy this life at the cost of the next is to be unfair to oneself.

How incongruous to have a sickly spirit and handsome body.

Waste is the result of sins.

Disappointment accompanies modesty.

Purity accompanies wisdom.

Cowardice is due to faint heartedness and weak faith.

Your tongue shall speak out what it is accustomed to.

A man without speech (tongue) is but an idol or a beast.

Silence is the reply to many a question.

Silence is the best reply to a fool.

The best speech is what is short and reasonable.

The best statement is what is evidenced by actions.

Excessive speech dishonours a man.

Length mars speech.



The ignorant does not understand the learned for he himself was never learned

*Knowledge kills ignorance*

Little knowledge of God damages conduct

Nothing except true light can ever purify life

Knowledge creates fear

Practice makes knowledge perfect

The conjecture of a man depends upon his sense

Want of sense cannot be compensated by wealth

The fool is alone though he be in society.

O Lord Pardon such sins of mine as bring down Thy curse or punishment

O God Strengthen my limbs for Thy service, and harden my wings to reach Thee

The wise man does not speak except when necessary or with reason

Every wise man is sad

The wiseman is gainer in whatever condition he may be

Knowledge is the compensation for mental exertions

Humility is the outcome of knowledge

Stinginess earns notoriety

Stinginess kills friendship most

There can be no charity with an empty pocket

Grey hair is the fore runner of death

A long life is attended with many misfortunes

Right is the best argument

A cheerful face puts out the fire of enmity

The legacy consoles the heirs

The choicest work of man is to associate with the virtuous

To be good to the good is goodness in its highest sense

Virtue never dies

No success with haste

Extravagance spoils charity.

Do not say what you do not know. Say only what you know.

That virtue is not virtue which leads a man into hell, and that vice is not vice which leads a man into Heaven.

There is no blessing better than heaven. There is nothing worse than hell.

Poverty is a curse.

The disease of the heart is worse than the disease of the body.

Wealth is a blessing.

Do not be indifferent to death for death is not indifferent to you.

He who fights against Truth shall sustain defeat.

Do not depend upon your sound health and wealth.

Death may come to you at any time. You may be reduced to abject poverty in the twinkling of an eye.

That day is really a day of Id when a man does not commit any sin.

Verily they who make provision for the next world are the friends of God.

Remember that worldly pleasures shall come to an end but sins shall remain.

It is folly to refrain from those persons who love you.

Your conscience is very precious. Do not sell it for anything but Heaven.

He who cannot take revenge upon his enemy carries tales from one person to another.

This world is created for the attainment of the next world. Do not waste your life in the enjoyment of the pleasures of this world.

Blames rest on him who rides with haste  
Do not make your stomach the grave yard of animals  
He who fears is safe  
The real gainer is he who checks the items of his own life  
Generosity hides defects  
O Lord Pardon such sins of mine as cut off my hope

He is the worst person for whom much formality is observed and much trouble is taken

He who sells his honour and prestige to his brother is separated from him

### **His Orders and Instructions**

The Amirul Momineen sent the following letter to the Kufites through Hazrat Imam Husain and Amar Yasir —

After praise to God and prayer for peace and blessings on Muhammad the Holy Prophet, let it be known to you, O people of Kufa that (Hazrat) Usman is killed about which you might have heard People blamed him I was one of the Muhajireen who tried to appease and pacify the people whereas Talha and Zubair were instigating the people against him (Hazrat) Ayesha was also angry with him So a party murdered him People took the oath of allegiance to me without any hesitation

Let it be known to you that Madina is no longer a place worth living now It has become the centre of seditious activities Now make haste to fight against the enemy of your Amir

After the conquest of Basra, the Amirul Momineen sent the following letter to the people of Kufa —

O People of Kufa You obey the orders of the Ahlul Bait for which God will reward you just as He rewards those who obey His orders and are grateful to Him for His blessings You responded to the call of your Amir

Sharih bin Haris was appointed Qazi of Kufa. He bought a house for eighty thousand dinars during the caliphate of Hazrat Ali. The Amirul Momineen sent for him and said, "I am told that you have bought a house for eighty thousand dinars for which you have a document signed by witnesses."

Sharih bin Haris thereupon said, "Yes, it is true." The Amirul Momineen got very angry with him.

Amirul Momineen sent the following instruction to Ashas Ibn Qais, the governor of Azar Baijan :—

Verily you have no right to spend upon yourself the income of your province. It is a trust and its responsibility lies upon your shoulder. I have appointed you the shepherd of the people. You have no right to interfere with their affairs without the permission of your Amir or without sufficient grounds. You are a treasurer. It is your bounden duty to send the treasure to me intact. I hope that I shall not prove to be a bad Amir (taskmaster) for you.

The following letter was sent to Amir Muawiyah :—

Verily those people who took the oath of allegiance to (Hazrat) Abu Bakr and (Hazrat) Umar (Hazrat) Usman have sworn allegiance to me also. Now no one has right to follow any path he likes and no one who is absent can oppose the oath of allegiance to me. Really he who is unanimously elected by the Muhajireen and the Ansar is approved by God. If any person goes against the unanimous decision of the Muhajireen and the Ansar, war against him is inevitable. O Muawiyah, if you dispassionately consider over the situation you shall not find me guilty of the murder of (Hazrat) Usman. You shall know that I passed my days in solitude. But it is quite a different problem that you demand the blood of (Hazrat) Usman from me who is not in any way connected with his murder. However, you are at liberty to do so.

The Amirul Momineen writes the following letter to the governor of Syria :—

After praise to God and prayer for peace and blessings on Muhammad the Holy Prophet let it be known to you that I am in receipt of your letters containing advice and suggestions. You have written such letters because of your ignorance. You have sent them to me because of your folly. None can guide the writer of such letters. None can put him on the straight path. He is the victim of avarice. He is misguided and misled. He has lost his senses and has gone astray.

The Amirul Momineen sent the following letter to Muawiyah:

Our tribe (Quraish) wanted to kill the Holy Prophet. They did much against us. They frightened us. They forced us to live in the valley of Shuab Abi Talib. They instigated the people to fight against us. (Hazrat) Obaidah bin Haris was killed in the battle of Badr. (Hazrat) Hamza was murdered in the battle of Uhud. (Hazrat) Jafar became a martyr in the battle of Mouta.

It is a pity that you challenge me. You never made any sacrifice for Islam. You have no excellence.

As regards your demand that I should send you the murderers of (Hazrat) Usman it is not in my power to do so. By God! if you are not disobedient to me, you shall very soon recognize them. But you shall be grieved to know them.

The Amirul Momineen sent the following letter to Muawiyah son of Abu Sufiyan :—

What will be your condition when the dress of the world which you are now putting on will be taken away from you? The pleasures and the temptations of the world are deceiving you. You responded to the call of the world. The world pulled you and you followed it. Abstain from the pleasures of this world. Make provision for the next world. But if you do not do it, you are a victim of the Satan.

O Muawiyah. Beware lest you should be lost for ever. You invite me to war. Leave the people and come to me.

Remember that I am Abul Hasan and that I have killed your grandfather, your maternal uncle and your brother in the battle of Badr I have the same sword and the same heart

I introduced absolutely no innovation in religion I am on the straight path but you have left it You had embraced Islam very unwillingly Do you think that you have come to fight for the blood of (Hazrat) Usman ? You know it well where (Hazrat) Usman was killed I know that if you are defeated in this battle, you shall weep and cry. The men of your party are infidels and have turned against truth

When the Amirul Momineen sent an army of three thousand under the command of Muaqal son of Qais Rehai to fight against the Syrians, he gave him the following instructions —

Fear God Whom you shall have to meet Fight against those who fight against you In the winter season, travel in the morning and the afternoon Let the people take rest at noon While travelling, think of the comfort of the people Never travel at night, which is meant for taking rest

When you meet your enemy, stand in the midst of your companions Do not take the initiative in the fight

The following instructions were given to the soldiers before the commencement of the battle of Siffin —

Do not take the initiative in the fight against the enemy Leave them alone till they start the battle If they start it, you must fight against them When they are defeated, do not kill any one of them Do not harm any disabled and naked persons Take proper care of the wounded people Do not harm any woman, even if she abuses you and your chiefs for a woman is physically and mentally weak During the life time of the Holy Prophet, we abstained from woman When there was any war, the Amirul Momineen said, "O God our hearts turn to Thee We look to Thee for help Hidden enmity is exposed People have become very jealous O God we complain to Thee against our enemy O God let truth prevail "

He said to his companions, "Do not be disappointed and discouraged if you have to retreat. Fight bravely and courageously and let your swords play their parts. Attack the enemies with your heads bent down. By God these persons (the enemies) have not really embraced Islam. They have accepted Islam as a measure of expediency to save their lives and property."

The Amirul Momineen sent the following letter to Hazrat Abdullah Ibne Abbas, the governor of Basra —

Let it be known to you that Basra is a Satanic place. It is the centre of seditious activities. Treat them kindly and win them over. Untie the knots of fear from their hearts. I am told that you have badly treated the tribe of Banu Tamim. Let it be known to you that the star of the Banu Tamim tribe has not set. They had never been our enemies. So we should treat them kindly. O Ibne Abbas, May God have mercy on you. Be careful in future.

Hazrat Abdullah bin Abbas was appointed governor of Basra, Ahwaz, Persia and Karman. He (Abbas) appointed Ziyad Ibne Abih the governor of Basra on his behalf. The Amirul Momineen sent the following instructions to him (Ziyad Ibne Abih) —

By God, I shall take you to task if I am told that you have misappropriated the wealth of the Muslims, whether it is little or much. I will reduce you to extreme poverty. There shall be the burden of sins upon your back. You shall lose your importance and prestige.

The Amirul Momineen sent the following instruction to Ziyad Ibne Abih —

Be moderate in your expenditure and give up extravagance. Remember tomorrow (the Day of Judgment). Keep money with you according to your needs and give the rest in charity as a provision for the next world. Do you expect to get the rewards of charity when you have plenty of money at your disposal but you do not give it to the poor and needy persons? Remember that a man shall be rewarded for the good deeds which he does in this world.

The Amirul Momineen gave the following instruction to Abdullah Ibne Abbas —

After praise to God and prayer for the Holy Prophet, let it be known to you that if a man attains a thing which is not worth losing he is very much pleased with it, and if he gets a thing which is worth losing, he shall be involved in great difficulties. You should feel sorry for the rewards of the next world if they are lost. Do not indulge in worldly pleasures. Do not lament over the loss of worldly ease and comfort.

The Amirul Momineen gave the following advice a few days before his death —

Do not make any one the co worker of God. Do not give up the sunnat of the Holy Prophet. Keep up these two pillars. If you act upon these two cardinal principles, you shall be quite safe. Look here. I was your Amir only yesterday. To day I am an object of warning for you. To morrow I shall be separated from you. If I die, my worldly life comes to an end, but if I survive the fatal wound, I am master of taking revenge upon my murderer. If I forgive him, it shall be for the sake of God. It will be good for you, if you forgive and forget him. Do you not wish to be pardoned by God? By God death is not coming to me all of a sudden. I hankered after martyrdom and I got it.

Instructions to the collector of Poor rate (Zakat) —

Fear God. Who has no co worker. Do not give trouble to any Muslim. Do not realize more rate than what is due to God. Treat the people kindly and tell them mildly that the Caliph has been pleased to appoint to you the Collector of Poor rate from them and as such they should pay it to you in accordance with the orders of God. Do not terrify the people in any way. Accept whatever gold or silver they may give you. Realize the poor rate of goats, sheep and camels also according to the law of God but do not be harsh and cruel while realizing poor rate.

Instructions given to a certain collector of Zakat —

I order you to be afraid of God in secret matters where none but God sees you. I order you not to be afraid of God



openly and disobey Him secretly. He who is honest in his words and deeds openly and secretly has discharged his duties satisfactorily. Do not ill-treat the Muslims while realizing poor rate because they are brethren-in-Islam.

Undoubtedly you have also some share in the poor rate. But poor and deserving persons have also some share in it. Verily I have given your share. Now you should give their shares to them. Otherwise many persons shall be your enemies on the Day of Judgment. Let it be known to you that if a person misappropriates the money of poor-rate he shall be condemned on the Day of Judgment.

The Amurul Momineen appointed Muhammad bin Abu Bakr the governor of Egypt. He gave him the following instructions at the time of appointment :—

Treat the Egyptians kindly and leniently. Always receive them with a smiling face. Be just and impartial in your dealings with them. The powerful and strong persons may not take undue advantage from you and the weak and the poor persons may not be disappointed from you. God shall take account of all your actions, good and bad, significant and insignificant. Remember that the pious persons passed away from this world with the gains of this world and the next one. They also enjoyed the pleasures of this world ; but at the same time they made provision for the next world also.

You write in it that God selected Muhammad the Holy Prophet of Islam and He helped those companions of the Prophet who assisted him in his great mission. It is a pity that you dare to remind us of the blessings of God conferred upon us. You have nothing to do with these affairs. You need not classify the ranks of the Muhajireen and the Ansar.

It should be known to you that you are not one of the Muhajireen. Do you not understand your shortcomings? You are lost in ignorance, you have gone astray from the straight path. Listen! I give a short description of the blessings of God. A party of the Muhajireen were killed in the cause of God. Every one of them has some rank and excellence. They are called the Syeds of the Martyrs. Do you not see that the hands of a few persons were cut off in the cause of God? They are blessed and fortunate people.

Listen, O Muawiyah! You do not belong to our rank and position. We belong to the family of the Prophet whereas you belong to that of Abu Jahal. Two of us are the chiefs of the youths of Paradise. We have so many excellences. You are condemned. Every one knows of our Islam. The fact that you are ignorant cannot be denied. The Holy Quran says that the best people are those who obey God and His Prophet and the God helps the Muslims.

We are superior to others because we are closely related with the Holy Prophet and because we obey him. You know that on the day of Bani Saqifa the Muhajireen told the Ansar that they were superior to them because of their relation with the Holy Prophet and they had no alternative but to accept it. According to this principle, we and not you deserve Caliphate.

You are under the impression that I was jealous of all the previous Caliphs and that I opposed all of them. Supposing it is true, you have no right to demand explanation from me. You want to disgrace me. You want to disgrace me but really you are disgraced and humiliated. If a Muslim is oppressed and persecuted, there is no disgrace for him unless he is sceptic about his faith.

As regards your demand for the revenge of the murder of (Hazrat) Usman, first see which of us was his greatest enemy

and who instigated the people to murder him I offered my services at his disposal but he refused to accept my help He wanted help from others but they hesitated to help him At length Destiny had its way

As regards your threat for rebellion and bloody war, let it be known to you clearly that I am not afraid of it

The following instructions were given to Hazrat Imam Hasan after the battle of Siffin —

These are the instructions of an aged and persecuted father who is about to die soon to a son who is on the straight path and who is surrounded by calamities and misfortunes After praise to God and prayer for the Holy Prophet, let it be known to you that I have fully understood that people have turned against me and that I am about to die, I advise you to be afraid of God Obey the commandments of God and always remember Him Be pious Remember death Have strong faith in God Make your heart afraid by showing it the changes of the times Tell it the history of the past people Remind it of the calamities which have befallen the people in the past They had to leave their homes and pass their days in poverty and solitude Very soon you shall be also one of them Do not make your next world subordinate to this world Do not talk about things which you do not know Give up the path which may lead you astray Order the people to be virtuous for you are deserving of it Refrain from those people who disobey God Fight for God Walk on the straight path unmindful of the censure of the people Acquire the knowledge of Religion Have patience which is a great virtue Seek the protection of God for it is He who helps the people Listen to my advice carefully The best talk is that which benefits others That knowledge which does not benefit any person is quite valueless O Son I have taught you all the necessary things I had a heartfelt desire to see you a pious and holy person and by the Grace of God I find you as such May God help you to be steady and firm on the straight path

O Son! Fear God Discharge the duties which God has imposed upon you Follow in the footsteps of the Holy

Prophet Never be sceptic about religion Always turn to God for help and guidance Give up those things which may make you superstitious or lead you astray

Let it be known to you that He Who is the master of death is the master of life He who has created you shall take your life also If you do not understand the secrets of God, do not be sceptic Pray to God only Who has created you and Who gives you livelihood

The Holy Prophet Muhammad has fully explained God He has given the message of God to the people Be satisfied with his lead God is one and only one He has no co worker He has no beginning and no end He is Omnipresent He is very High and Sublime He cannot be confined to any place Do only good deeds Make provision for the next world Take warnings from the past people Bear the troubles of this world patiently and cheerfully

O Son! Let it be known to you that you are created for the next world and not for this world. You are born to die and not to live. You live in a place which is subject to decay and destruction. You stand on a path which shall lead you to the next world. You cannot escape death. Remember death very frequently. Do not love this world. The evils of the world are well known. The worldly people are like barking dogs. They are ferocious beasts. They hanker after wealth. They have lost their senses. So you need not be greedy of this world. God has made you free so you should not be the slave of any one. Expect nothing from any one but God. Whatever you get from God though it may be little is much better than what you get from the people though it may be much. Never try to get any thing illegally and unlawfully. A man who talks too much talks nonsense. Move in the company of good persons and be one of them. Refrain from bad persons. Be moderate in every thing. Experience is the best teacher. Avarice leads to unscrupulous means. The greedy are the slaves of their desires. Humanity is of two kinds—those who hope in vain and those who gain to be discontented. Frequent remembrance of death decreases one's worldly desires. Those who walk on the surface of the earth shall one day be interred into it. Sinning is a disease repentance is its medicine and abstaining from it is its cure. Your ambition is your most inveterate enemy. Treat your brother kindly even if he is bad. Do not make friendship with the friend of your enemy. Do not be the enemy of your friend. Give advice to your brother whether he likes it or dislikes it. Control your anger. Do not return evil for evil. There are two kinds of livelihood—one which you want and the other which wants you (you shall get what is fated for you). Do not feel sad at worldly loss. There is no disease more fatal than want of wisdom. He who gives up the path of moderation and temperance kills himself. He who praises you even in your absence is your friend. He is a true adviser who points out your mistakes. He who has no friend is really poor. Never talk about the defects of any person. Take advantage of any present opportunity. Live with your body in this world and with your faith in the next. Let good deeds be your companions and desires be your enemies. Obedience to women is the worst ignorance. Let your women observe

purdah and let no one see them. Women are flowers. You can smell them and let them do domestic work. They must not do the work of men. Treat your family and tribe very kindly. Now I entrust you to God. May He keep you in happiness and prosperity in both the worlds.

The Amirul Momineen wrote the following letter to Muawiyah :—

Due to you, a very big party perished. You deceived those people owing to your insubordinate and rebellious nature. You misguided and misled them. They were lost in ignorance. They became sceptics and went astray from the straight path. They became unfortunate. They returned to the infidelity of the pre-Islamic days. Those persons who turned against you are saved. They who deserted you and turned to God are fortunate and blessed. O Muawiyah ! fear God. The Satan is driving you into hell. You shall have to leave this world very soon and the next world is at hand.

The Amirul Momineen had appointed Muhammad bin Abi Bakr the governor of Egypt but later on he deposed him and sent Malik Ashtar to work as the governor of Egypt but he died on the way. Muhammad bin Abi Bakr was very much grieved to hear of his dismissal. Thereupon the Amirul Momineen sent the following letter to him :—

I am told that you are grieved on the appointment of Malik Ashtar as the governor of Egypt. I did this not because of your negligence in the discharge of your duties but because I wanted to transfer you to some other province where the people may be more obedient and submissive to you than the people of Egypt who require a strict and stern person and Malik Ashtar was a man of that type. But Destiny had its way and he died. May God have mercy on him. Now you come out to fight against your enemy. Be ready to fight against the person who wants to fight with you. Seek the help of God and He shall help you.

On the martyrdom of Muhammad bin Abi Bakr, the Amirul Momineen wrote the following to Abdullah bin Abbas :—

After praise to God and the prayer for the Holy Prophet Muhammad let it be known to you that the enemy has conquered Egypt Muhammad bin Abi Bakr has been killed May God have mercy on his soul He was a kind and good son He was a diligent governor He used to fight against his enemies bravely and fearlessly I advised the people openly and secretly to obey his orders before his martyrdom They obeyed his orders unwillingly They offered lame excuses for non participation in Jihad By God! if I do not have a heartfelt desire for martyrdom, I would not stay with these people even for one day

The following letter was sent to Muawiyah —

You (Muawiyah) have become a victim to your inordinate ambition You rebel against me You carry on agitation against me You are bent upon disregarding my rights You are taking up the cause of (Hazrat) Usman and demanding revenge upon his murderers Truly speaking you helped (Hazrat) Usman only in those matters and on such occasions when you got something, but you turned your face against him on those occasions when you expected nothing from him

The following letter was sent to the Egyptians when Malik Ashtar was appointed the governor of Egypt —

After praise to God and prayer for the Holy Prophet, let it be known to you that I have sent a person to you (as governor) who is fearless and bold He is very strict to the bad characters He is the brother of Malik bin Haris Obey his orders if they are in accordance with the teachings of Islam He is one of the swords of God If he orders you to march, march, if he orders you to stay, stay for he does not do any thing against my wishes I have appointed him governor over you as he can fight against your enemy boldly and fearlessly

The Amirul Momineen sent the following letter to Amir Binal As —

Verily you have subordinated your religion to the worldliness of that person who has gone astray and who is lost in

ignorance and who is impious He blames good and pious persons in his meetings If wise persons move in his society, he makes them foolish You follow in his footsteps You seek his favour You have ruined your both worlds If you had followed the true path you would have achieved your aim If God makes me victorious over you and the son of Abu Sufiyan, I will take both of you to task for your misconduct But if both of you are victorious and survive me, you shall be punished in the next world

The Amirul Momineen sent the following letter to Abdullah Ibne Abbas —

After praise to God and prayer for the Holy Prophet, let it be known to you that I appointed you to a responsible post I had much confidence in you and I expected that you would always help me and send the money of the Public Treasury to me, regularly, but finding me in distress, troubles and misfortunes, you misappropriated the money of Baitul mal like others and turned your face against me You neither helped me nor did you return to me the money of the Public Treasury You took advantage of this golden opportunity and sent the money to Hedjaz as if it was yours and you had inherited it from your parents

Good God! You are not afraid of the Day of Judgment You are not afraid of the punishment of God How did you dare to misappropriate the money of the Public Treasury which was to be spent on the orphans, needy and helpless person and Majahedeen? You are marrying girls with this money Fear God and return the money If you fail to comply with this order I will take you to task I will kill you with my own sword By God! If Hasan and Husain had done this, I would not have excused them for it By God I am very much grieved at your conduct Wait for sometime and see the result You shall repent for your actions but you shall not be given any time

The Amirul Momineen sent the following instructions to Amr Ibne Abi Salma, the governor of Bahrein —

After praise to God and prayer for the Holy Prophet, let it be known to you that I have appointed Noman bin



Ajlan the governor of Bahrein in your place Undoubtedly you have discharged your duties satisfactorily and you have regularly sent me the money of the Public Treasury I am quite satisfied with your work Come to me immediately I have dispensed with your services there not because that you are guilty but because I stand badly in need of your help against the Syrians with whom I have made up my mind to fight and I have full confidence in you

Usman Ibne Haneef Ansari was the governor of Basra The Amirul Momineen was informed that he had accepted the invitation of a certain person Thereupon he sent him the following letter —

After praise to God and prayer for the Holy Prophet, let it be known to you, O Haneef, that I am told that you accepted the invitation of a certain person and you enjoyed the delicious food I never expected it from you You should think of the legal and illegal things If a thing is legal, you are at liberty to eat it, but if a thing is illegal, you must on no account eat it Beware! Your Imam is satisfied with two pieces of cloth to wear and two loaves of bread to eat Try to be pious I never accumulated the wealth of this world Verily only the garden of Fidak belonged to us but we are deprived of it I do not grumble at it God is the final authority to decide this case After death, I shall be buried in the dark and narrow grave Let us try to be pious and virtuous If I had wished I would have enjoyed the pleasures of this world, but I do not like to enjoy worldly pleasures As an Imam, it is my bounden duty to help the needy and the poor I am not born to enjoy the pleasures of this world

Let it be known to you that the branches of a desert tree are very much stronger than those of a garden tree which is frequently watered The branches of a garden tree are very delicate and they decay very soon In the same way if a man eats little, he shall be very strong and fight boldly and fearlessly against his enemy By God! if all the Arabs fight against me, I will not run away from them I will fight against them till the last moment, very soon I shall fight against that person (Muawiyah) and purify his land

O world, turn to thyself I am out of thy clutches  
I am beyond thy reach I cannot fall a victim to thee Where  
are those people whom thou hadst deceived ? Where are  
those nations who were tempted by thy attractions and  
charms ? They now lie buried in graves They sleep there  
Verily thou hast deceived people Nations have perished due  
to thee Thou hast destroyed kings Alas Those who  
loved thee perished Those who turned against thee were  
safe Get thee gone By God I am not thy victim Thou  
canst disgrace and humiliate me I am perfectly contented  
and satisfied with what I have

Blessed is he who is pious and who is grateful to God  
Blessed is he who always prays to God at night

O Ibne Haneef Fear God and be satisfied with what  
you get legally so that you be safe from the burning fire of  
hell

When Ibne Muljam wounded the Amirul Momineen  
fatally, he sent for Hazrat Imam Hasan and Imam Husain  
and gave them the following instructions —

I advice both of you to fear God Do not seek this world  
although the world may seek you Never feel sorry at the  
loss of worldly things Speak nothing but truth I advice  
you to do good deeds and to be the enemy of a tyrant Always  
help the needy and the poor Be pious Reform your  
society Treat the orphans very kindly Let them not be  
hungry even for a day Do not disgrace them in your meet-  
ings Treat your neighbours well Fear God and do good  
deeds lest your enemy should excel you Offer your prayers  
regularly and punctually for it is one of the pillars of Islam  
Protect the House of God So long as you are alive, do not  
leave it alone (Perform pilgrimage to it) If you give it up,  
God shall punish you Fight for the cause of God Fight  
against your passions Fear God Love one another and  
live in peace Follow the commandments and prohibitions  
of God otherwise your wicked people shall become your masters  
and although you shall pray to God, yet your prayers shall not  
be accepted

He further said —O Sons of Abdul Muttalib Do not wander about saying that the Amirul Momuneen is killed Beware! Do not kill any one but my murderer Remember that if I die of his blow kill him with only one blow Do not cut off his limbs for it is against the teachings of the Holy Prophet Muhammad (Peace be on him)

The Amirul Momuneen sent the following letter to Muawjah —

A man ruins his faith and this world both when he becomes cunning and cruel You know it fully well that you cannot take revenge upon the murderers of (Hazrat) Usman Some persons formed a party and carried on agitation that the Caliph of the time was disobeying God but He falsified them Fear that day when a man who has done good deeds in this world will be envied by others and the man who has become a victim to Satan in this world shall be disgraced You have invited me to the Quran but you are not deserving of it I have not accepted your suggestion but I have followed the Holy Quran

The Amirul Momuneen gave the following instructions to his tax collectors —

After praise to God and prayer for the Holy Prophet let it be known to you that if man is not afraid of God he can not escape the punishment on the Day of Judgment You are given a little trouble but you shall be highly rewarded for it Be fair and just in your dealings with the people Be patient in satisfying the needs of the people for you are their treasurers and the messengers of the Imam Never be proud or arrogant Do not harass the people while realizing taxes Be very lenient Do not beat any one Do not touch the property of any person whether he is a Muslim or a non Muslim But you are allowed to confiscate the horses and the weapons of war of the non Muslims with which they oppress and persecute the Muslims Be always ready to listen the good pieces of advice Ask the soldiers to have good morals Help the people Strengthen Islam Be kind and lenient to others Be grateful to God Help the people according to your means and power Verily there is none better and more powerful than God

The Amirul Momineen gave the following instructions to Malik Ashtar when he was appointed the governor of Egypt.

The following instructions were given to Malik Ashtar on the occasion of his appointment as the governor of Egypt by (Hazrat) Ali, the servant of God. Instructions concerning the realization of taxes fighting against the enemy, reforming the inhabitants of Egypt, etc. are given here. The governor designate has been ordered to fear God and follow His commandments and prohibitions as they are given in His Book, for if a person does not follow them, his fate is sealed for good. He has been ordered to help God with his hand, tongue and heart. God is the protector of the person who considers Him to be All-powerful. He (Malik Ashtar) has been ordered to control his passions for they mislead and misguide a person.

O Malik! Let it be known to you that you are appointed the governor of Egypt. People shall criticize your actions. Do good deeds. Keep your passions under control. Be just and fair in your dealings with the subjects. Love them. Treat them kindly. There are two kinds of people. (1) They are either your brothers in Islam or (2) they are creatures like you. They commit faults, knowingly or unknowingly. They commit sins consciously or unconsciously. You excuse them just as you expect that God will forgive your sins, for you are their chief.

Do not be ashamed if you pardon others. Do not be pleased if you punish others. Do not lose your temper soon. Never say that you are their chief, for it weakens the character of a man. If you ever become proud of your high position, consider the powers and grandeur of God, for it will save you from arrogance. Remember that God degrades a proud and cruel person

Be just; for if you are not just, you are a tyrant and a tyrant is the enemy of God. God listens to the oppressed people. Adopt the path of moderation in your dealings. Try to please the people.

*The common people are a great power for the enemies of Islam. Mix with them freely and frankly. But refrain from*

Abu Musa Ashari was the governor of Kufa. He was against the Battle of Jamal. The Amirul Momineen came to know of his intention. He wrote to him the following letter —

After praise to God and prayer for the Holy Prophet let it be known to you that I have received complaint against you which is partly against you and partly in your favour. As soon as you receive this letter, come to me and obey my orders, but if you disobey my orders get you gone. I shall get you arrested wherever you may be.

The sedition of the people of Jamal as you think is not insignificant. Of course, it is very tragic and it will have far reaching effect. But however, we should try to nip the mischief in the bud. You are ordered to take part in the battle against the party of Jamal. But if you despise it, go away out of our sight. By God, it is a true Jihad and therefore it is your bounden duty to help your Caliph and Imam.

The Amirul Momineen sent the following letter to Qasim bin Abbas who was the governor of Mecca.

After praise to God and prayer for the Holy Prophet let it be known to you that you must maintain Haj for the people and remind them of the rewards and punishments of God in the next world. Hold meetings in the morning and the evening to give them guidance. Educate the ignorant people. Have discussions with the learned people. Do not prevent any needy person from seeing you. Be careful of the public treasury. Distribute it among the poor and needy persons, and send me whatever is left so that we may distribute it among the deserving persons here. Do not realize any tax from the Meccans. May God enable us to love each other.

## CLASSIFIED SAYINGS OF HAZRAT ALI.

### 1. *Hazrat Ali's Prayers.*

1. O God ! Bless one whose chief treasury is hope and whose weapons are tears.
2. O God ! Thou art too great to destroy one whom Thou hast brought up.
3. *Prayer is the believer's weapon.*
4. Is there any one who understands Thy power and is not afraid of Thee
5. Is there any one who knows what Thou art and is not trembling with Thy fear.
6. O God ! This delicate skin of mine cannot bear the fire of hell.
7. Every arrow does not hit the mark, nor is every prayer granted.
8. O God ! Wilt Thou let fire predominate over faces which have fallen flat in presence of Thy sublimity ?
9. O Thou art quick to bless, pardon one who owns nothing but a prayer
10. O Lord ! I pray Thee to make me happy and satisfied with Thy bounty (for me).
11. O Lord ! I approach Thee through remembrance of Thee.
12. O Lord ! Pardon such sins of mine as cut off my hope.
13. O Lord ! Pardon such sins of mine as impede my prayers from reaching Thee
14. O Lord ! Pardon such sins of mine as spoil Thy blessings I enjoy.
15. O Lord ! Pardon such sins of mine as bring down Thy curse or punishment.
16. O Lord ! Pardon such sins of mine as mar my fallibility.

17. O Lord ! Thou standest alone, as regards honour and permanence and hast subdued Thy creatures by means of death and annihilation.
18. O God ! Strengthen my limbs for Thy service.
19. And harden my wings to reach Thee.

## 2. *Aspiration.*

20. Love of wealth fosters aspirations and spoils virtue.
21. Aspirations know no bounds.
22. Trust in God is the best founded aspiration.
23. The highest aspiration of animals is to satisfy their stomachs.
24. The highest aspiration of wild beasts is to be oppressive over others.
25. The highest aspiration of women is to give charm to this worldly life and to create mischief in it.
26. The highest aspiration of Ali is to guide the world.
27. Let your aspiration be for the next world and you will be reformed.
28. A man's worth depends on the nobility of aspirations.
29. Greatness lies in the nobility of aspiration and not in the decaying bones of ancestors.

## 3. *Wisdom and Foolishness.*

30. Enmity is the occupation of fools.
31. The conjecture of the wise is oracular.
32. One's obedience to God is proportionate to one's wisdom.
33. To fight against one's own desires is highest wisdom.
34. The chief aim of wisdom is to admit one's ignorance.
35. The wise aim at perfection.
36. The foolish aim at wealth.
37. The conjecture of a man depends on his sense.
38. The conjecture of a wise man is more correct than the conviction of a fool.

39. To separate from things of time and to connect self with things of eternity is highest wisdom.
40. He is really wise whose action attests to his words
41. The wise man does not speak except when necessary or with reason.
42. Every wise man is sad
43. The wise man is a gainer in whatever condition he may be
44. Association with a fool is torture to the soul.
45. The fool is alone though he be in society.
46. Want of sense cannot be compensated by wealth.
47. There is no disease more hopeless than want of wisdom.

#### 4. *Knowledge.*

48. The chief aim of knowledge is virtue.
49. Fear of God is the final result of knowledge.
50. The sum of excellency is knowledge.
51. Knowledge is the compensation for mental exertions.
52. The best knowledge is what benefits its possessor.
53. Knowledge is life and health.
54. Humility is the outcome of knowledge.
55. The learned man is alive though dead.
56. Who teaches me a letter binds me with a fetter.
57. Religion is a store and knowledge the route to it.
58. In order to be successful obey knowledge and disobey ignorance
59. Many quote knowledge but few note it in mind.
60. The most complete gift of God is life based on knowledge.
61. The innumerable fools have made the learned very scarce.
62. The learned man understands the ignorant for he was once ignorant himself.
63. The ignorant does not understand the learned for he was never learned himself.



64. The learned are the living ones in the dead mass of ignorance.
65. Knowledge gives life to the soul.
66. Knowledge kills ignorance.
67. Little knowledge (of God) damages conduct.
68. Nothing except true light can ever purify life.
69. To respect the learned is to respect God.
70. Knowledge creates fear.
71. Practice makes knowledge perfect.
72. To teach is to learn.

#### *5. Contentment and Avarice.*

73. Avarice leads to unscrupulous means.
74. When we do not hope we do not fret.
75. Disappointment goes with avarice
76. Nothing is more detrimental to a religion than avarice.
77. The greedy are slaves of their desires.
78. Non-expectation comforts the soul.
79. Greed mars justice.
80. Humanity is of two kinds ; those who hope in vain and those who gain to be discontented.
81. Avarice diminishes one's dignity without increasing one's fortune.
82. Though naked and starving the contented are the most happy.
83. Contentment is an incomparable treasure.
84. Contentment is an everlasting honour.
85. The contented alone live in peace.

#### *6. Silence and Speech.*

86. As a man's wisdom increases, so his words decrease.
87. Silence is the reply to many a question.
88. Silence is the best reply to a fool.
89. The best speech is what is short and reasonable.

- 90 The best statement is what is evidenced by actions  
 91 Be silent and be safe  
 92 Excessive speech dishonours a man  
 93 Length mars speech  
 94 Speech is like medicine a small dose of which cures  
     and excess kills the patient  
 95 The less you say the more will you be certified  
 96 Do not mind the speaker but mind the speech

### 7 *The Tongue*

- 97 A man is hidden beneath his own tongue  
 98 A sweet tongue begets many friends  
 99 Your tongue will speak out what it is accustomed to  
 100 The mind of the fool is behind his own tongue The  
     fool speaks before he thinks  
 101 The tongue interprets the mind  
 102 A man's tongue is his own balance  
 103 The tongue pierces deeper than the spear  
 104 Truth is the divine tongue  
 105 Beware of the tongue for it is an arrow that often goes  
     wrong  
 106 A man without speech (tongue) is but an idol or a beast  
 107 The tongue of the wise man is in his own mind (The  
     wise man speaks in his mind) or (the wise man thinks  
     much and speaks little)  
 108 A check upon the tongue is better than a check upon  
     the stomach  
 109 He who does not control his tongue will be sorry

### 8 *Alms Giving And Stinginess*

- 110 The miser's wealth goes either to his heirs or to the  
     wind  
 111 None is more solitary than a miser  
 112 A miser is only a treasurer for his heirs

113. Stinginess kills friendship most.
114. Stinginess earns notoriety.
115. To be stingy with what is in hand is to distrust God.
116. Stinginess defames moderation.
117. Money does not benefit its possessor except when he parts with it.
118. Generosity hides defects.
119. The best of men is he who benefits men.
120. There can be no charity with an empty pocket.
121. Extravagance mars charity.
122. Let a fortification of alms protect your property.
123. Giving after refusal is more pleasing than refusal after giving.
124. A cheerful face is one of the two kinds of gift.
125. When any one hopes well of you do not disappoint him.
126. Charity earns praise.
127. Real charity relieves the whole distress.
128. The short coffers of the charitable man are preferable to the abundance of the miser.
129. Charity would not be guided by fear or hope.

### *9. General Sayings.*

130. Disappointment accompanies modesty.
131. Purity accompanies wisdom.
132. Fasting of mind is to abstain from all evil temptations.
133. Cowardice is due to faint-heartedness and weak faith.
134. Things moving towards us will soon meet us.
135. In overwhelming difficulties a man's greatness is disclosed.
136. He who discloses the words of the wise imbibes their essence himself.
- ✓ 137. A long life is attended with many misfortunes.
138. Earth is the best purifier.

- 139. Confession is the best saviour.
- 140. Right is the best argument.
- 141. A jester degrades himself.
- 142. The real gainer is he who checks the items of his own life.
- 143. He who fears is safe.
- 144. Prosperity consists not in the increase of money and children but in the growth of virtue and development of patience.
- 145. A cheerful face puts out the fire of enmity.
- 146. To be ungrateful is to put a stop to gifts.
- 147. There is no redeemer better than repentance.
- 148. Do not make your stomach the graveyard of animals.
- 149. Disease is one of the two kinds of confinement.
- 150. Yielding to anger means shame and sin.
- 151. Brothers enhance our pleasure and sooth our pains.
- 152. Minds are locked up stores, only question opens them.
- 153. Even if veils are removed from before me, nothing can add to my belief.
- 154. When God favours any of his servants He engages him in His love.
- 155. Grey hair is the forerunner of death.

#### 10. *Death.*

- 156. People are asleep when alive they are only awake when they are dead.
- 157. To loosen the reins of one's desires is to hasten one's death.
- 158. Do before you die.
- 159. Death mocks at aspirations.
- 160. Death is separation from the perishable and merging in the Imperishable.
- 161. Frequent remembrance of death decreases one's worldly desires.

162. Those who walk on the surface of the earth shall one day be interred into it.

11. *Patience, Forbearance and Resignation.*

163. Uneasiness of mind is more painful than patient resignation.
164. The chief aim of Islam is resignation to God.
165. Patience is the fruit of faith.
166. Know that resignation is the first step in true religion and sincerity its end.
167. With patience misfortunes are no misfortunes.
168. The power of forbearing anger is superior to that of taking revenge.

12. *Wealth.*

169. Love of wealth fosters aspirations and spoils virtue.
170. The legacy consoles the heirs.
171. Wealth is the source of passions.
172. The best investment is that with which duties are discharged.
173. Money does not benefit its owner except when he parts with it.

13. *Virtue and Good Deeds.*

174. With virtue one can enslave the free.
175. Virtue never dies.
176. It is easier to be virtuous than to be vicious.
177. The choicest work of man is to associate with the virtuous.
178. To be good to the good is goodness in its highest sense.
179. A man's value depends on his moral worth.
180. Fall in with virtue and fall out with desires.

14. *Ignorance.*

181. No pain more troublesome than ignorance.

- 182. People are enemies of what they are ignorant.
- 183. The boon of the ignorant is like a garden on a dunghill.
- 184. The chief aim of wisdom is to admit one's own ignorance.
- 185. Doubt is the outcome of ignorance.
- 186. He is truly ignorant who ignores self-value.
- ✓187. The ignorant man is a loser in whatever condition he may be.
- 188. Obedience to women is the worst ignorance.

### 15 *Justice.*

- 189. The Crown of the King is his own Justice.
- 190. Be just and you will rule.
- 191. Greed spoils justice.
- 192. Divine fortification protects the country of a Just King.

### 16. *Compulsion and Tyranny.*

- 193. Compulsion blinds the mind.
- 194. Tyranny leads to moral cowardice.
- 195. Tyranny is the forerunner of ruin.
- 196. To assist the wrong is to oppress the right.
- 197. Cruelty to the distressed is the worst cruelty.
- 198. God hastens the fall of tyrants.
- 199. A tyrant's success is his moral defeat.
- 200. To enjoy this life at the cost of the next is to be unfair to one self.
- 201. Oppression of orphans and widows brings down disease and loss of blessings.

### 17. *Mercy and Forgiveness.*

- 202. Forgiving is the crown of greatness.
- 203. Mercy graces power.
- 204. How excellent is mercy conjoined with might.
- 205. How mean is punishment in spite of apologies.

### 18. *Humility, Pride and Self-Conceit.*

- 206. Humility advertises greatness.
- 207. Humility is the outcome of knowledge.
- 208. Humility inspite of position is like mercy inspite of power. (Humility is to High Position what Mercy is to Power.)
- 209. Pride forfeits praise.
- 210. Self—conceit poisons the mind.
- 211. Self-conceit impedes the progress.
- 212. Pride mars greatness.
- 213. Humility is one of the nets spread by real greatness.
- 214. Boasting issues from small minds.

### 19. *Desires and Passions.*

- 215. To fight against one's own desires is the highest wisdom
- 216. Happy is he who conquers his self.
- 217. Your desire is your most inveterate enemy.
- 218. Fight against self is the greatest of all fights.
- 219. Carnal appetites are nets spread by the Devil.

### 20. *People.*

- 220. People are more like the times they live in than they are like their forefathers.
- 221. The strongest of men is he who subdues his passions.
- 222. How incongruous ! to have a sickly spirit and a handsome body.
- 223. He who understands humanity seeks solitude.
- 224. He who loves God fights shy of people.
- 225. None who makes a correct self estimation is ever lost.

### 21. *The World.*

- 226. The love of the world is the root of all troubles.
- 227. This world is a bridge leading to the next.
- 228. This world is the shop of misery.

- 229. The greatest folly is to love the world.
- 230. The world is bitter with all its sweetness
- 231. The divorce of this world is the marriage settlement of the next (of paradise)
- 232. This world is a poison ; only those ignorant of it swallow it.
- 233. Live with your body in this world and with your faith and works for the next.

## 22. *Advice.*

- 234. Admonition in public is fruitless.
- 235. An adviser devoid of virtue is like a bow without its string.
- 236. *He is a true adviser who points out your mistakes.*

## 23. *Warning Lessons.*

- 237. Every look supplies a lesson.
- 238. The dead supply lessons for the living.
- 239. The walks of those who have gone before are instructive to those who follow.
- 240. Experience is a sufficient teacher.
- 241. Old age is a sufficient warner.

## 24. *Sin.*

- 242. Your separate existence (from Divinity) is an unpardonable sin.
- 243. Fear none but your sins.
- 244. Sin spoils service of God.
- 245. Waste is the result of sin.
- 246. Sin makes for impurity.
- 247. Avoiding sin is better than practising virtue.
- 248. Sinning is a disease, repentence is its medicine, and *abstaining from it is its cure.*



## 25. *Works.*

- 249. Actions are the outcome of intentions.
- 250. Be sincere in your works, for the Divine test is very keen
- 251. That last day of reckoning and not of working.
- 252. Want of sincerity spoils good deeds.
- 253. The hardest part of an action is to secure the purity of the motive.
- 254. Without sincerity all works are valueless.
- 255. Let good deeds be your companions and desires be your enemies.
- 256. Little knowledge damages conduct
- 257. Many work for what will ruin them.
- 258. None is more respectable than a pious man.
- 259. No shelter is more safe than piety.
- 260. One's obedience to God is proportionate to one's wisdom
- 261. Piety is the best reformer of a religion.
- 262. Piety is the safest refuge.
- 263. Ostentation spoils worship.

## 26. *Moderation and Extravagance.*

- 264. Blessed is he who knows his real worth and does not trespass his limits.
- 265. Moderation is half economy.
- 266. Extravagance goes before starvation.
- 267. Extravagance spoils charity.
- 268. Stinginess spoils moderation.
- 269. Little with care is more lasting than much with extravagance.
- 270. No greatness is extravagance.
- 271. No waste is moderation.
- 272. Moderation is the path of safety.

### 27. *Lying and Dishonesty.*

- 273. Friendship is impossible with a liar.
- 274. Misrepresentation spoils narration
- 275. Lying spoils news
- 276. Untruthfulness is not Islamic morality.
- 277. Untruthfulness and hypocrisy degrades morality.

### 28. *Honesty.*

- 278. Honesty is divine tongue.
- 279. To fulfil promises is the highest form of integrity.
- 280. Truth means conformity of speech with the Divine mode of working.

### 29. *Courtesy.*

- 281. Respectability is inconsistent with the Courtesy.
- 282. One's behaviour is the index of one's mind.
- 283. Courtesy is the best inheritance.
- 284. Nothing is more ornamental than courtesy.

### 30. *Obedience to Parents.*

- 285. Care for parents is the foremost duty.
- 286. Care for your parents, and your children will care for you.

### 31. *Praise.*

- 287. Pride forfeits praise.
- 288. Generosity earns praise.
- 289. He who praises you murders you.

### 32. *Laughter.*

- 290. A modest smile is the best laughter.
- 291. Excessive laughter damages the respectability of a person.
- 292. Excessive laughter deadens the mind.

### 33. *Backbiting.*

- 293. There is no sincerity in a backbiter.
- 294. He who listens to backbiting is a backbiter himself.
- 295. He who bears tales to you, certainly bears tales about you.

### 34. *Envy.*

- 296. Envy robs a man of his happiness.
- 297. The weapon of jealousy is criticism.
- 298. Jealousy devours virtue as fire devours wood.

### 35. *Haste.*

- 299. No success with haste.
- 300. Blames rest on him who rides with haste.

## THE FAMOUS SERMON OF HAZRAT ALI WITHOUT 'ALIF' i. e. 'A.'

It is related in "Matalib Al-Suoul Fi Mana-quib Aale Rasul" and "Sharh Nahjul Balagha" by Ibne Babawe referring to Hazrat Imam Jaffer Al-Sadiq, on whom be peace, who related that one day the companions of the Holy Prophet had assembled at a place and during the discourses amongst them, it was pointed out by some one as to which letter from amongst all the alphabetical letters in Arabic is mostly used. Unanimously all replied that 'ALIF' i. e., 'A' is the most used letter in the Arabic language and that without 'ALIF' i.e., 'A' it would be impossible to speak out. On hearing this Hazrat Ali immediately rose up and delivered the following speech which contained no 'ALIF' at all.

"I praise Him Who has showered much bounty upon me. His bounty is very wide and perfect and His mercy over-powers His anger or wrath and His verdicts are accepted unconditionally and His will is eternal and His arguments are un-questionable, and His verdicts are based on equality and justice.

I praise Him accepting His Lordship, humbly submitting in His service, abstaining from His wrath, recognising His oneness and beseech His pardon from His wrath and anger. I praise Him just as a candidate beseeching His pardon

became afar from His praise (he turned aghast and lost) although He is nearest, He is very far; that means as far as His mercy and wisdom are concerned, He is near, and He is very far because we cannot count His being far. He who supplicates, He accepts his supplication. He gives him livelihood and bestows bounty upon him. He is a very generous One and possesses very strong grasp and great mercy and very severe punishment. His mercy is paradise or heaven, very wide and wonderful. And his punishment is hell, which is killing and vast. And I bear witness that the Holy Prophet Muhammad was His Apostle and servant and His chosen one and His prophet and His beloved friend and exalted and He sent him in such a period when that period was free from any prophet and infidelity was rampant throughout and He sent Him for this very reason so that He may show mercy and beneficence upon His servants and that He ended the prophetship and all divine arguments with the Holy Prophet. So this prophet did exort people and conveyed the messages of God to His servants and he did everything possible to convey all the messages from the above High to the creatures and the prophet was very kind to every believer and ho used to show mercy to them. He was also very generous and he was a dictator of his time. He was very holy. Upon him be the mercy, the glory and blessings upon this holy prophet, from God Who is benevolent and merciful and the acceptor of our prayers.

O! who are assembled here, I convey to you

your Lord's (God's) messages and I leave a will here and I remind you of your own doings and shortcomings. It is incumbent on you to fear Allah so that your hearts get satisfaction and you must fear Allah in such a way that tears may flow out of your eyes and you be the guardian against evil so that you may get salvation by your own abstaining against your evil before that trying day (day of judgment) comes, lest you may be indifferent to your own actions. Think and consider your own self on that very day. Only he will get salvation, who had (in this world) guarded against evil, did good actions and the scale of his goodness outwits the scale of his sins. It is incumbent upon you that when you pray Allah, then pray Him with humility, repentance and all that which can please Him and take out the thoughts of sins from your hearts and turn to God with repentance.

It is incumbent upon you to value and take it as a boon the following :—

- (1) Health before the disease comes.
- (2) Youth before the old age arrives.
- (3) Wealth before poverty comes.

(4) Your native place before you embark on journeys.

(5) Your leisure time before you engross in works, lest the old age comes and you become base and mean in the eyes of all. Your disease may cause the physician in a riddle as to its cure and friends may depart. Ultimately resulting in life's end and ending conscience and

wisdom. People sometimes say he is laid down in a bad condition due to the excess of heat (fever). The body becomes lean and frail. It becomes hard upon the man concerned to give his soul (life) and all people from all corners, far and near, come to him till his eyes remain opened as it were and a sort of perspiration is created on his forehead. His nose turns curved and his voice becomes benumbed. The soul comes out of the body. His wife begins then crying and weeping. The grave is then dug. His children become orphans, his friends and companions shut away. His limbs become useless (without life). Eyes and ears lose their powers. Then the man concerned is caused to lie straight. The dress which he wore is then taken out and he is given the last bath. Then his body is dried up by the help of a piece of cloth. Then a long piece of cloth is put on the dead body and all the necessary items that are required for the dead man are brought there. When all these preparations are over then the body is entrusted to those who carry it to the grave-yard. The funeral is taken out then. A simple prayer is offered and he is laid down in the grave and the grave is covered with dust and soil. Relations and companions or friends after burying the dead body return to their respective homes as if they turned tail from him and the dead man remains in the grave and becomes to the degree of dust and insects begin to roam about on his body. His nose bleeds with puss. His flesh becomes dust and his blood on both sides of his body becomes dry. His bones become frail and ultimately turn mud

and all these remain till the day of resurrection, till such time comes when God resurrects them all and resurrects them from the graves. When 'Soor' (the divine cosmic trumpet) is blown on the day of judgment then he will rise up from his grave and then alone he will be called to give his accounts before his Lord. As a matter of fact, all the dead bodies of the graves will be resurrected on that appointed day and their ins and outs will be exposed. Every saint and prophet will be called then. Wonderful and anonymous cries and voices will be heard and the men will be aghast due to fear and dreadfulness and he will be driven towards his Lord, Who knows every small and big sin. On that day the man concerned will be passing so much of his own perspiration due to his innumerable sins that he will be drown in his own perspiration to the degree of his mouth. He will then repent and will cry and complain but nobody would hear him and no excuse of his will be accepted. All his sins and crimes will be vivid. He will look to his bad deeds committed by his eyes. Same will be the process with his legs and hands and all his private parts and his kins will bear witness against him. So a big chain will be put around his neck. Then he will be dragged helplessly as he will be on that day, towards the promised Hell. He will be entered while crying and roaring and there he will be tortured very severely. Boiled water will be given to him to drink so that his mouth will be burnt. His kins will be off and angels will be beating him. That man will, on that day, complain much but the angels of the Hell will turn



their faces from the complaining man. In this very way for a long period, this man will be tortured and there he will be complaining, repenting and roaring and would say, "I beseech in the name of God, so that you may save me from every harmful thing and I beg His pardon earnestly. He is the one God, alone to fulfil my desires. He will comply to my requests." He who is not to be tortured will remain in Heaven with respect for ever. He will be served faithfully throughout and he will remain there with peace and tranquility promised for the heavenly bodies. We will be drinking from the clear water of heavens; some of the waters taste ginger like and some of the waters taste like amber, grease and musk. There he will remain for ever infinitely. He will drink whatever his self desires. He will never get headache there, nor he will be unconscious, nor he will become mad. This stage of a man is ultimately reserved and promised by Allah, the one God, alone for the men who fear Him and guard against every evil and the Hell is for him who disobeys his Creator and obeys his own self and bad desires and commits crimes and sins. I fear God, the knowing, the merciful and compassionate. I ask Him to save me from every enemy cursed and away from the blessings of God. I humbly submit to Him and all of you who assembled here should pray for me. Allah alone, the one only is (enough) for me."

لا املك مستشعر السرور يشرب من خمور في روض مغدق  
 ليس يصيدع من شرابه وليس ينزف لبيه هذه منزلة من  
 خشى ربه وحذر نفسه معصيته وتلك عموبة من جحد  
 مشيته وسولت له نفسه معصيته فهو قول فصل وحكم  
 عدل وخير قصص قص ووعظ به نص تنزيل من حكيم  
 حميد نزل به روح قدس مبين على قلوب نبي مهتد رشيد  
 صلت عليه رسل سفرة مكرمون بررة عذت رب عالم  
 رحيم كريم من شر كل عدو لعين رجيم فليتضرع متضرعكم  
 وليبتهل مبتهلهم وليستغفر كل مرءوب منكم لي ولكم  
 وحسبي ربي وحده \*

ببطشه ورجله بخطوه وفرجه بمسه وجلده بالسه فساسل  
جيدة وغات يده \*

وسيق فيسحب (فمسحب) وحده فورد جهنم بكرب  
وشدة فضل يعذب في جهنم ويسقى شربة من حميم وتشوى  
وجهه وتسايخ جلده وتضربه زبينة بمقمع من حديد ويعود  
جلده بعد كجلد جديد \*

يستغيث فتعرض عنه خزنة جهنم ويستصرخ فيابث  
حقبة يندم نعوذ برب قدير من شر كل مصير ونسأله  
عفو من رضى عنه ومغفرة من قبله \*

وهو ولي مسئلي ومنتج طابتي فمن زحزح عن تعذيب  
ربه جعل في جنته بعزته وخلد في قصور مشيدة وملاك  
بحور عين وحفدة وطيف عايه بكثوم وسكن حظيرة  
قدم وتقاب في نعيم وسفى من تسنيم وشرب من عين  
ساسيل ومزج له بزنجبيل محتم بمسك وعبير مستديم

وهيل عليه غفره وحشى عليه مدره وتحقق حذره  
 ونسى خبره ورجع عنه وليه وصفيه ونديه ونسيبه وحميمه  
 وتبدل به قرانه وحبيبته فهو حشوقبر ورهين قفريسى  
 بحسمه دود قبره ويسيل صديده من منحره يسحق  
 تربته لحه وينشف دمه بجنيبه ويرم عظامه حتى يوم  
 حشره فينشر من قبره \*

حين ينفخ في صور ويدعى بحشر ونشور فثم بعثت  
 قبور وحصات سريرة صدور وجئ بكل نبي وصديق  
 وشهيد فوجد (و توحد) للفصل قدير بعبده خير بصير \*

فكم من ذفرة تصينه وحسرة تصنيه في موقف مهيل  
 ومشهد جليل بين يدي ملك عظيم وبكل صغير وكبير عليم  
 وحيث لا يلجمه عرقه ويحضره قلقة عبرته غير مرداة وصرخته  
 غير مسموعة وحجته غير مقبولة وتبيغت جريته ونشر  
 صحيفته فنظر في سوء عمله وشهدت عليه عينه بنظره ويده

هرمه وسعته قبل فقره وفرغته قبل شغله وحضره قبل  
سفره وتهونه قبل تكبره وتهرم تعرض وتسقم عمله طيبه  
ويعرض عنه حبيبته وينقطع عمره ويتغير عقله \*

ثم قيل موعوك وجسمه منهوك ثم جدته في نزع  
شديد وحضره كل قريب وبعيد فشخص بصره وطمح  
نظره ورشح جبينه وعطف عرينه وسكن حنينه وجذب  
نفسه وبكته عرسه وحفر راسه ويتم ولده \*

وتفرق عنه عدده وفصم جمعه وذهب بصره وسمعه  
ومددو جردو عرى وغسل ونشف وسجى وبسط له ووهي  
ونشر عليه كفنه وشد منه ذقنه وقص وعم وودع وسلم  
وحمل فوق سرير وصلى عليه بتكبير بغير سجود وتعفير  
ونفل من دور مزخرفة وقصور مشيدة وحجر منجدة  
وجعل في ضريح ملحود وضيق مرصود بلبن منضود  
ومسفف بجلمود \*

وشهدت بعث محمد رسولہ وعبدہ وصفيہ ونبيہ  
 ونجیہ (نجیہ) وحبیہ وخالیہ بعثہ فی خیر عصر وحين  
 فترة وكفر رحمة لعبيده ومنة لمزيدہ ختم به نبوته  
 وشييد به حجته \*

توعظوا نصيح وبلغ وكدح رؤف بكل مؤمن رحيم  
 سخى رضى ولي زكى عليه رحمة وتسليم وبركة وتعظيم  
 وتكريم من رب فغفور رحيم قريب مجيب \*

وصيتكم معشر من حضرني بوصيته ربكم وذكركم  
 بسنة نبيكم فعليكم برهة تسكن قلوبكم وخشية تدرى  
 دموعكم وتقية تنجيكم قبل يوم يبايكم وتذهاكم يوم يفوز  
 فيه من ثمل وزن حسنته وخف وزن سيئته ولتكن مسئلتكم  
 وتلقكم مسئلة ذل وخضوع وشكر وخشوع بتوبة ونزوع  
 وندم ورجوع \*

وليغتنم كل مغتنم منكم صحته قبل سقمه وشيئته قبل

صنيعه جل عن مشير ووزير وعن عون ومعين وانصير وانظير \*  
علم فسترو بطن نخبو وملك فقهر وعصى ففقر وحكم  
فعدل \*

وتكرم وتفضل لم يزل وان يزول ليس كمثله شيء \*  
وهو قبل كل شيء رب متعزز بعزته (متفرد) ومتمكن  
بقوته \*

متقدس بعلوه متكبر بسموه ليس يدركه بصرو ولم  
يحط به نظر قوي منيع بصير سميع رؤف رحيم \*  
عجز عن وصفه من وصفه (يصفه) وحصل عن نعته من  
عرفه قرب فبعدو وبعد فقرب يجيب دعوة من يدعوه  
ويرزقه ويحبوه \*

ذو لطف خفي بطش قوي ورحمة موسعة وعقوبة  
موجعة رحمته جنة عريضة مؤنقة وعقوبته جحيم  
ممدودة مؤبقة \*

## \*HAZRAT ALI.

---

Ali ! Thou art the rarest gem  
That the world has ever seen ;  
Thou art the embodiment great  
Of godliness, beauty and love ;  
Thy spotless life so pure and good  
Inspires men to tread their upward path  
To the horis land of calm and bliss.  
First in battle and first in truth  
Thou stood'st stately, sure and firm  
By Muhammad's dark and sunny days,  
Dined with him that Mearaj night,  
And slept on his hallowed bed that perilous night  
From whence the Islamic age began.  
Full of wisdom and full of lore art thou  
As truly said the Holy Prophet great—  
For at thy feet the two worlds sat  
Praising thee for thy talents rare ;  
Ali ! Thou shouldst be the first Caliph !  
Immortal Kaaba thy place of birth  
Immortal Koofa-Mosque thy place of death ;  
Ali—Thou art a blessed God's own being !

---

\* By the Courtesy of Mr. Mirza Gulam Raza, (Massahpatam).



Thou wert to thine murderer extremely kind  
Who clapped in chains was before thee brought!  
Even as the sandal tree its fragrance yields  
To the wood-cutter that strikes it hard  
Thou set him free with a glorious grace  
And offered him thy bread and milk—  
These eternal charity deeds of thine  
The living world remembers and reveres sure !  
Cursed be the men that envied thee  
And those that thought and spoke low of thee,  
Despite the virtuous birth and heritage divine ;  
Aided thus by false and impure men  
Did jarring sect into Islam creep  
But thou shinest above these all  
O Lord Like a steadfast star of the skies !  
These numbers are but a frail tribute to thee  
My Lord, I implore thee—cast once thy gracious  
smile on me  
One and one only, I implore thee, then I am  
blessed.